

To our customers,

Old Company Name in Catalogs and Other Documents

On April 1st, 2010, NEC Electronics Corporation merged with Renesas Technology Corporation, and Renesas Electronics Corporation took over all the business of both companies. Therefore, although the old company name remains in this document, it is a valid Renesas Electronics document. We appreciate your understanding.

Renesas Electronics website: <http://www.renesas.com>

April 1st, 2010
Renesas Electronics Corporation

Issued by: Renesas Electronics Corporation (<http://www.renesas.com>)

Send any inquiries to <http://www.renesas.com/inquiry>.

Notice

1. All information included in this document is current as of the date this document is issued. Such information, however, is subject to change without any prior notice. Before purchasing or using any Renesas Electronics products listed herein, please confirm the latest product information with a Renesas Electronics sales office. Also, please pay regular and careful attention to additional and different information to be disclosed by Renesas Electronics such as that disclosed through our website.
2. Renesas Electronics does not assume any liability for infringement of patents, copyrights, or other intellectual property rights of third parties by or arising from the use of Renesas Electronics products or technical information described in this document. No license, express, implied or otherwise, is granted hereby under any patents, copyrights or other intellectual property rights of Renesas Electronics or others.
3. You should not alter, modify, copy, or otherwise misappropriate any Renesas Electronics product, whether in whole or in part.
4. Descriptions of circuits, software and other related information in this document are provided only to illustrate the operation of semiconductor products and application examples. You are fully responsible for the incorporation of these circuits, software, and information in the design of your equipment. Renesas Electronics assumes no responsibility for any losses incurred by you or third parties arising from the use of these circuits, software, or information.
5. When exporting the products or technology described in this document, you should comply with the applicable export control laws and regulations and follow the procedures required by such laws and regulations. You should not use Renesas Electronics products or the technology described in this document for any purpose relating to military applications or use by the military, including but not limited to the development of weapons of mass destruction. Renesas Electronics products and technology may not be used for or incorporated into any products or systems whose manufacture, use, or sale is prohibited under any applicable domestic or foreign laws or regulations.
6. Renesas Electronics has used reasonable care in preparing the information included in this document, but Renesas Electronics does not warrant that such information is error free. Renesas Electronics assumes no liability whatsoever for any damages incurred by you resulting from errors in or omissions from the information included herein.
7. Renesas Electronics products are classified according to the following three quality grades: “Standard”, “High Quality”, and “Specific”. The recommended applications for each Renesas Electronics product depends on the product’s quality grade, as indicated below. You must check the quality grade of each Renesas Electronics product before using it in a particular application. You may not use any Renesas Electronics product for any application categorized as “Specific” without the prior written consent of Renesas Electronics. Further, you may not use any Renesas Electronics product for any application for which it is not intended without the prior written consent of Renesas Electronics. Renesas Electronics shall not be in any way liable for any damages or losses incurred by you or third parties arising from the use of any Renesas Electronics product for an application categorized as “Specific” or for which the product is not intended where you have failed to obtain the prior written consent of Renesas Electronics. The quality grade of each Renesas Electronics product is “Standard” unless otherwise expressly specified in a Renesas Electronics data sheets or data books, etc.
 - “Standard”: Computers; office equipment; communications equipment; test and measurement equipment; audio and visual equipment; home electronic appliances; machine tools; personal electronic equipment; and industrial robots.
 - “High Quality”: Transportation equipment (automobiles, trains, ships, etc.); traffic control systems; anti-disaster systems; anti-crime systems; safety equipment; and medical equipment not specifically designed for life support.
 - “Specific”: Aircraft; aerospace equipment; submersible repeaters; nuclear reactor control systems; medical equipment or systems for life support (e.g. artificial life support devices or systems), surgical implantations, or healthcare intervention (e.g. excision, etc.), and any other applications or purposes that pose a direct threat to human life.
8. You should use the Renesas Electronics products described in this document within the range specified by Renesas Electronics, especially with respect to the maximum rating, operating supply voltage range, movement power voltage range, heat radiation characteristics, installation and other product characteristics. Renesas Electronics shall have no liability for malfunctions or damages arising out of the use of Renesas Electronics products beyond such specified ranges.
9. Although Renesas Electronics endeavors to improve the quality and reliability of its products, semiconductor products have specific characteristics such as the occurrence of failure at a certain rate and malfunctions under certain use conditions. Further, Renesas Electronics products are not subject to radiation resistance design. Please be sure to implement safety measures to guard them against the possibility of physical injury, and injury or damage caused by fire in the event of the failure of a Renesas Electronics product, such as safety design for hardware and software including but not limited to redundancy, fire control and malfunction prevention, appropriate treatment for aging degradation or any other appropriate measures. Because the evaluation of microcomputer software alone is very difficult, please evaluate the safety of the final products or system manufactured by you.
10. Please contact a Renesas Electronics sales office for details as to environmental matters such as the environmental compatibility of each Renesas Electronics product. Please use Renesas Electronics products in compliance with all applicable laws and regulations that regulate the inclusion or use of controlled substances, including without limitation, the EU RoHS Directive. Renesas Electronics assumes no liability for damages or losses occurring as a result of your noncompliance with applicable laws and regulations.
11. This document may not be reproduced or duplicated, in any form, in whole or in part, without prior written consent of Renesas Electronics.
12. Please contact a Renesas Electronics sales office if you have any questions regarding the information contained in this document or Renesas Electronics products, or if you have any other inquiries.

(Note 1) “Renesas Electronics” as used in this document means Renesas Electronics Corporation and also includes its majority-owned subsidiaries.

(Note 2) “Renesas Electronics product(s)” means any product developed or manufactured by or for Renesas Electronics.



User's Manual

RX78K0R Ver. 4.30

Real-Time Operating System

Coding for CubeSuite

Target Tool

RX78K0R Ver.4.30

Document No. U19443EJ1V0UM00 (1st edition)

Date Published December 2008

© NEC Electronics Corporation 2008

Printed in Japan

[MEMO]

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1	OVERVIEW	16
CHAPTER 2	SYSTEM CONSTRUCTION	17
CHAPTER 3	TASK MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS	27
CHAPTER 4	TASK DEPENDENT SYNCHRONIZATION FUNCTIONS	38
CHAPTER 5	SYNCHRONIZATION AND COMMUNICATION FUNCTIONS	47
CHAPTER 6	MEMORY POOL MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS	69
CHAPTER 7	TIME MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS	75
CHAPTER 8	SYSTEM STATE MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS	82
CHAPTER 9	INTERRUPT MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS	94
CHAPTER 10	SYSTEM CONFIGURATION MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS	104
CHAPTER 11	SCHEDULER	110
CHAPTER 12	SERVICE CALLS	122
CHAPTER 13	SYSTEM CONFIGURATION FILE	216
CHAPTER 14	CONFIGURATOR CF78K0R	234
APPENDIX A	WINDOW REFERENCE	239
APPENDIX B	CAUTIONS	253
APPENDIX C	INDEX	255

Windows, and Windows Vista are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

TRON is the abbreviation of "The Real-time Operating system Nucleus."

ITRON is the abbreviation of "Industrial TRON."

μ ITRON is the abbreviation of "Micro Industrial TRON."

TRON, ITRON, and μ ITRON do not refer to any specific product or products.

The μ ITRON4.0 Specification is an open real-time kernel specification developed by TRON Association.

The μ ITRON4.0 Specification document can be obtained from the TRON Association web site (<http://www.assoc.tron.org/>).

The copyright of the μ ITRON4.0 Specification document belongs to TRON Association.

- **The information in this document is current as of December, 2008. The information is subject to change without notice. For actual design-in, refer to the latest publications of NEC Electronics data sheets or data books, etc., for the most up-to-date specifications of NEC Electronics products. Not all products and/or types are available in every country. Please check with an NEC Electronics sales representative for availability and additional information.**
- No part of this document may be copied or reproduced in any form or by any means without the prior written consent of NEC Electronics. NEC Electronics assumes no responsibility for any errors that may appear in this document.
- NEC Electronics does not assume any liability for infringement of patents, copyrights or other intellectual property rights of third parties by or arising from the use of NEC Electronics products listed in this document or any other liability arising from the use of such products. No license, express, implied or otherwise, is granted under any patents, copyrights or other intellectual property rights of NEC Electronics or others.
- Descriptions of circuits, software and other related information in this document are provided for illustrative purposes in semiconductor product operation and application examples. The incorporation of these circuits, software and information in the design of a customer's equipment shall be done under the full responsibility of the customer. NEC Electronics assumes no responsibility for any losses incurred by customers or third parties arising from the use of these circuits, software and information.
- While NEC Electronics endeavors to enhance the quality, reliability and safety of NEC Electronics products, customers agree and acknowledge that the possibility of defects thereof cannot be eliminated entirely. To minimize risks of damage to property or injury (including death) to persons arising from defects in NEC Electronics products, customers must incorporate sufficient safety measures in their design, such as redundancy, fire-containment and anti-failure features.
- NEC Electronics products are classified into the following three quality grades: "Standard", "Special" and "Specific".
 The "Specific" quality grade applies only to NEC Electronics products developed based on a customer-designated "quality assurance program" for a specific application. The recommended applications of an NEC Electronics product depend on its quality grade, as indicated below. Customers must check the quality grade of each NEC Electronics product before using it in a particular application.
 "Standard": Computers, office equipment, communications equipment, test and measurement equipment, audio and visual equipment, home electronic appliances, machine tools, personal electronic equipment and industrial robots.
 "Special": Transportation equipment (automobiles, trains, ships, etc.), traffic control systems, anti-disaster systems, anti-crime systems, safety equipment and medical equipment (not specifically designed for life support).
 "Specific": Aircraft, aerospace equipment, submersible repeaters, nuclear reactor control systems, life support systems and medical equipment for life support, etc.

The quality grade of NEC Electronics products is "Standard" unless otherwise expressly specified in NEC Electronics data sheets or data books, etc. If customers wish to use NEC Electronics products in applications not intended by NEC Electronics, they must contact an NEC Electronics sales representative in advance to determine NEC Electronics' willingness to support a given application.

(Note)

- (1) "NEC Electronics" as used in this statement means NEC Electronics Corporation and also includes its majority-owned subsidiaries.
- (2) "NEC Electronics products" means any product developed or manufactured by or for NEC Electronics (as defined above).

[MEMO]

INTRODUCTION

Readers	This manual is intended for users who design and develop application systems using 78K0R microcontrollers products.	
Purpose	This manual is intended for users to understand the functions of RX78K0R described the organization listed below.	
Organization	<p>This manual consists of the following major sections.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• OVERVIEW• SYSTEM CONSTRUCTION• TASK MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS• TASK DEPENDENT SYNCHRONIZATION FUNCTIONS• SYNCHRONIZATION AND COMMUNICATION FUNCTIONS• MEMORY POOL MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS• TIME MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS• SYSTEM STATE MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS• INTERRUPT MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS• SYSTEM CONFIGURATION MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS• SCHEDULER• SERVICE CALLS• SYSTEM CONFIGURATION FILE• CONFIGURATOR CF78K0R	
How to read this manual	<p>It is assumed that the readers of this manual have general knowledge in the fields of electrical engineering, logic circuits, microcontrollers, C language, and assemblers.</p> <p>To understand the hardware functions of the 78K0R microcontrollers → Refer to the User's Manual of each product.</p> <p>To understand the instruction functions of the 78K0R microcontrollers → Refer to 78K0R Microcontrollers Instructions User's Manual (U17792E).</p>	
Conventions	Data significance:	Higher digits on the left and lower digits on the right
	Note:	Footnote for item marked with Note in the text
	Caution:	Information requiring particular attention
	Remark:	Supplementary information
	Numerical representation:	Binary...XXXX or XXXXB
		Decimal...XXXX
		Hexadecimal...0xXXXX
	Prefixes indicating power of 2 (address space and memory capacity):	
	K (kilo)	$2^{10} = 1024$
	M (mega)	$2^{20} = 1024^2$

Related Documents

Refer to the documents listed below when using this manual.

The related documents indicated in this publication may include preliminary versions.

However, preliminary versions are not marked as such.

Documents related to development tools (User's Manuals)

Document Name		Document No.
RX Series	Start for CubeSuite	U19428E
	Message for CubeSuite	U19433E
RX78K0R Ver.4.30	Coding for CubeSuite	This document
	Debug for CubeSuite	U19446E
	Analysis for CubeSuite	U19448E
	Internal Structure for CubeSuite	U19453E
CubeSuite Integrated Development Environment	Start	U19549E
	Programming	U19390E
	Message	U19550E
	78K0R Coding	U19382E
	78K0R Build	U19385E
	78K0R Debug	U19388E
	78K0R Design	U19379E

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1	OVERVIEW	16
1.1	Outline	16
1.1.1	Real-time OS	16
1.1.2	Multi-task OS	16
CHAPTER 2	SYSTEM CONSTRUCTION	17
2.1	Outline	17
2.2	Coding of Processing Program	18
2.3	Coding of System Configuration File	18
2.4	Coding of User-Own Coding Module	19
2.5	Coding of Directive File	20
2.5.1	rx78k0r segment	20
2.5.2	rxinf segment	20
2.5.3	sit segment	21
2.5.4	sysarea segment	21
2.5.5	stkarea segment	21
2.5.6	p0area, p1area, p2area, p3area segment	22
2.6	Creating Load Module	23
2.7	Embedding System	26
CHAPTER 3	TASK MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS	27
3.1	Outline	27
3.2	Tasks	27
3.2.1	Task state	27
3.2.2	Task priority	29
3.2.3	Create task	29
3.2.4	Delete task	29
3.2.5	Basic form of tasks	30
3.2.6	Internal processing of task	30
3.3	Activate Task	31
3.3.1	Queuing an activation request	31
3.3.2	Not queuing an activation request	32
3.4	Cancel Task Activation Requests	33
3.5	Terminate Task	34
3.5.1	Terminate invoking task	34
3.5.2	Terminate task	35
3.6	Change Task Priority	36
3.7	Reference Task State	37
CHAPTER 4	TASK DEPENDENT SYNCHRONIZATION FUNCTIONS	38
4.1	Outline	38
4.2	Put Task to Sleep	38
4.3	Wakeup Task	40
4.4	Cancel Task Wakeup Requests	41
4.5	Release Task from Waiting	42
4.6	Suspend Task	43
4.7	Resume Suspended Task	44
4.8	Delay Task	46

CHAPTER 5	SYNCHRONIZATION AND COMMUNICATION FUNCTIONS	47
5.1	Outline	47
5.2	Semaphores	47
5.2.1	Create semaphore	47
5.2.2	Delete semaphore	47
5.2.3	Release semaphore resource	48
5.2.4	Acquire semaphore resource	49
5.2.5	Reference semaphore state	52
5.3	Eventflags	53
5.3.1	Create eventflag	53
5.3.2	Delete eventflag	53
5.3.3	Set eventflag	54
5.3.4	Clear eventflag	55
5.3.5	Wait for eventflag	56
5.3.6	Reference eventflag state	61
5.4	Mailboxes	62
5.4.1	Create mailbox	62
5.4.2	Delete mailbox	62
5.4.3	Message	63
5.4.4	Send to mailbox	64
5.4.5	Receive from mailbox	65
5.4.6	Reference mailbox state	68
CHAPTER 6	MEMORY POOL MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS	69
6.1	Outline	69
6.2	Fixed-Sized Memory Pool	69
6.2.1	Create fixed-sized memory pool	69
6.2.2	Delete fixed-sized memory pool	70
6.2.3	Acquire fixed-sized memory block	70
6.2.4	Release fixed-sized memory block	73
6.2.5	Reference fixed-sized memory pool state	74
CHAPTER 7	TIME MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS	75
7.1	Outline	75
7.2	Timer Handler	75
7.2.1	Define timer handler	75
7.3	Delayed Wakeup	76
7.4	Timeout	76
7.5	Cyclic Handlers	77
7.5.1	Create cyclic handler	77
7.5.2	Delete cyclic handler	77
7.5.3	Basic form of cyclic handlers	77
7.5.4	Internal processing of cyclic handler	78
7.5.5	Start cyclic handler operation	79
7.5.6	Stop cyclic handler operation	80
7.5.7	Reference cyclic handler state	81
CHAPTER 8	SYSTEM STATE MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS	82
8.1	Outline	82
8.2	Rotate Task Precedence	82
8.3	Reference Task ID in the RUNNING State	84
8.4	Lock the CPU	85
8.5	Unlock the CPU	87
8.6	Disable Dispatching	88

8.7	Enable Dispatching	89
8.8	Reference Contexts	90
8.9	Reference CPU State	91
8.10	Reference Dispatching State	92
8.11	Reference Dispatch Pending State	93
CHAPTER 9 INTERRUPT MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS		94
9.1	Outline	94
9.2	Interrupt Entry Processing	94
9.2.1	Basic form of interrupt entry processing	95
9.2.2	Internal processing of interrupt entry processing	95
9.3	Interrupt Handlers	96
9.3.1	Define interrupt handler	96
9.3.2	Basic form of interrupt handlers	97
9.3.3	Internal processing of interrupt handler	99
9.4	Controlling Enabling/Disabling of Interrupts	100
9.4.1	Interrupt level under management of the RX78K0R	100
9.4.2	Controlling enabling/disabling of interrupts in the RX78K0R	100
9.4.3	Controlling enabling/disabling of interrupts in user processes	101
9.5	Multiple Interrupts	102
CHAPTER 10 SYSTEM CONFIGURATION MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS		104
10.1	Outline	104
10.2	Boot Processing	105
10.2.1	Define boot processing	105
10.2.2	Basic form of boot processing	105
10.2.3	Internal processing of boot processing	106
10.3	Initialization Routine	107
10.3.1	Define initialization routine	107
10.3.2	Undefine initialization routine	107
10.3.3	Basic form of initialization routine	107
10.3.4	Internal processing of initialization routine	108
10.4	Kernel Initialization Module	108
10.5	Reference Version Information	109
CHAPTER 11 SCHEDULER		110
11.1	Outline	110
11.2	Driving Method	110
11.3	Scheduling System	110
11.4	Ready Queue	111
11.4.1	Create ready queue	111
11.4.2	Delete ready queue	111
11.4.3	Rotate task precedence	112
11.4.4	Change task priority	114
11.5	Scheduling Disabling	116
11.5.1	Disable dispatching	117
11.5.2	Enable dispatching	118
11.6	Delay of Scheduling	119
11.7	Idle Routine	120
11.7.1	Define idle routine	120
11.7.2	Undefine idle routine	120
11.7.3	Basic form of idle routine	120

11.7.4	Internal processing of idle routine	121
CHAPTER 12	SERVICE CALLS	122
12.1	Outline	122
12.2	Call Service Call	123
12.2.1	C language	123
12.2.2	Assembly language	124
12.3	Amount of Stack Used by Service Calls	125
12.4	Data Macros	127
12.4.1	Data types	127
12.4.2	Current state	128
12.4.3	WAITING types	128
12.4.4	Return value	129
12.4.5	Conditional compile macro	129
12.4.6	Others	129
12.5	Packet Formats	130
12.5.1	Task state packet	130
12.5.2	Semaphore state packet	132
12.5.3	Eventflag state packet	133
12.5.4	Message packet	134
12.5.5	Mailbox state packet	135
12.5.6	Fixed-sized memory pool state packet	136
12.5.7	Cyclic handler state packet	137
12.5.8	Version information packet	138
12.6	Task Management Functions	139
12.7	Task Dependent Synchronization Functions	149
12.8	Synchronization and Communication Functions (Semaphores)	162
12.9	Synchronization and Communication Functions (Eventflags)	169
12.10	Synchronization and Communication Functions (Mailboxes)	180
12.11	Memory Pool Management Functions	189
12.12	Time Management Functions	197
12.13	System State Management Functions	202
12.14	System Configuration Management Functions	214
CHAPTER 13	SYSTEM CONFIGURATION FILE	216
13.1	Notation Method	216
13.2	Configuration Information	217
13.2.1	Cautions	217
13.3	System Information	218
13.3.1	System stack information	218
13.3.2	Task priority information	219
13.4	Static API Information	220
13.4.1	Task information	220
13.4.2	Semaphore information	223
13.4.3	Eventflag information	224
13.4.4	Mailbox information	225
13.4.5	Fixed-sized memory pool information	226
13.4.6	Cyclic handler information	228
13.5	Stack Size Estimation	230
13.5.1	System stack size	230
13.5.2	Stack size of the task	231
13.6	Description Examples	233

CHAPTER 14	CONFIGURATOR CF78K0R	234
14.1	Outline	234
14.2	Activation Method	235
14.2.1	Activating from command line	235
14.2.2	Activating from CubeSuite	236
14.2.3	Command file	237
14.2.4	Command input examples	238
APPENDIX A	WINDOW REFERENCE	239
A.1	Description	239
APPENDIX B	CAUTIONS	253
B.1	Restriction of Compiler Option	253
B.2	Handling Register Bank	253
B.3	Pointer Declarations	254
APPENDIX C	INDEX	255

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 2-1	Example of System Construction	17
Figure 2-2	Project Tree Panel (After Adding sys.cfg)	24
Figure 2-3	Property Panel: [System Configuration File Related Information] Tab	25
Figure 2-4	Project Tree Panel (After Running Build)	26
Figure 3-1	Task State	27
Figure 5-1	Processing Flow (Semaphore)	47
Figure 5-2	Processing Flow (Eventflag)	53
Figure 5-3	Processing Flow (Mailbox)	62
Figure 8-1	Rotate Task Precedence	82
Figure 8-2	Lock the CPU	85
Figure 8-3	Disable Dispatching	88
Figure 9-1	Processing Flow (Interrupt Handler)	96
Figure 9-2	ISP1 and ISP0 Bits in PSW Register	100
Figure 9-3	Multiple Interrupts	102
Figure 10-1	Processing Flow (System Initialization)	104
Figure 11-1	Implementation of Scheduling Method (Priority Level Method or FCFS Method)	111
Figure 11-2	Rotate Task Precedence	112
Figure 11-3	Change Task Priority	114
Figure 11-4	Scheduling Suppression Function	116
Figure 11-5	Delay of Scheduling	119
Figure 13-1	System Configuration File Description Format	217
Figure 13-2	Example of System Configuration File	233
Figure 14-1	Example of Command File Description	237

LIST OF TABLES

Table 2-1	RX78K0R Segments	20
Table 3-1	Waiting States	28
Table 7-1	Delayed Wakeup	76
Table 7-2	Timeout	76
Table 9-1	Differences Between Interrupt Handlers and Interrupt Servicing	94
Table 9-2	States Enabling and Disabling Interrupts upon Process Start	101
Table 9-3	Settable Interrupt Level (Enabling Multiple Interrupts from User Application)	103
Table 9-4	Settable Interrupt Level (Disabling Multiple Interrupts from User Application)	103
Table 12-1	Stack Amount Used by Service Call (Unit: Bytes)	125
Table 12-2	Data Types	127
Table 12-3	Current State	128
Table 12-4	WAITING Types	128
Table 12-5	Return Value	129
Table 12-6	Conditional Compile Macro	129
Table 12-7	Others	129
Table 12-8	Task Management Functions	139
Table 12-9	Task Dependent Synchronization Functions	149
Table 12-10	Synchronization and Communication Functions (Semaphores)	162
Table 12-11	Synchronization and Communication Functions (Eventflags)	169
Table 12-12	Synchronization and Communication Functions (Mailboxes)	180
Table 12-13	Memory Pool Management Functions	189
Table 12-14	Time Management Functions	197
Table 12-15	System State Management Functions	202
Table 12-16	System Configuration Management Functions	214
Table A-1	List of Window/Panels	239

CHAPTER 1 OVERVIEW

1.1 Outline

The RX78K0R is a built-in real-time, multi-task OS that provides a highly efficient real-time, multi-task environment to increase the application range of processor control units.

The RX78K0R is a high-speed, compact OS capable of being stored in and run from the ROM of a target system.

1.1.1 Real-time OS

Control equipment demands systems that can rapidly respond to events occurring both internal and external to the equipment. Conventional systems have utilized simple interrupt handling as a means of satisfying this demand. As control equipment has become more powerful, however, it has proved difficult for systems to satisfy these requirements by means of simple interrupt handling alone.

In other words, the task of managing the order in which internal and external events are processed has become increasingly difficult as systems have increased in complexity and programs have become larger.

Real-time OS has been designed to overcome this problem.

The main purpose of a real-time OS is to respond to internal and external events rapidly and execute programs in the optimum order.

1.1.2 Multi-task OS

A "task" is the minimum unit in which a program can be executed by an OS. "Multi-task" is the name given to the mode of operation in which a single processor processes multiple tasks concurrently.

Actually, the processor can handle no more than one program (instruction) at a time. But, by switching the processor's attention to individual tasks on a regular basis (at a certain timing) it appears that the tasks are being processed simultaneously.

A multi-task OS enables the parallel processing of tasks by switching the tasks to be executed as determined by the system.

One important purpose of a multi-task OS is to improve the throughput of the overall system through the parallel processing of multiple tasks.

CHAPTER 2 SYSTEM CONSTRUCTION

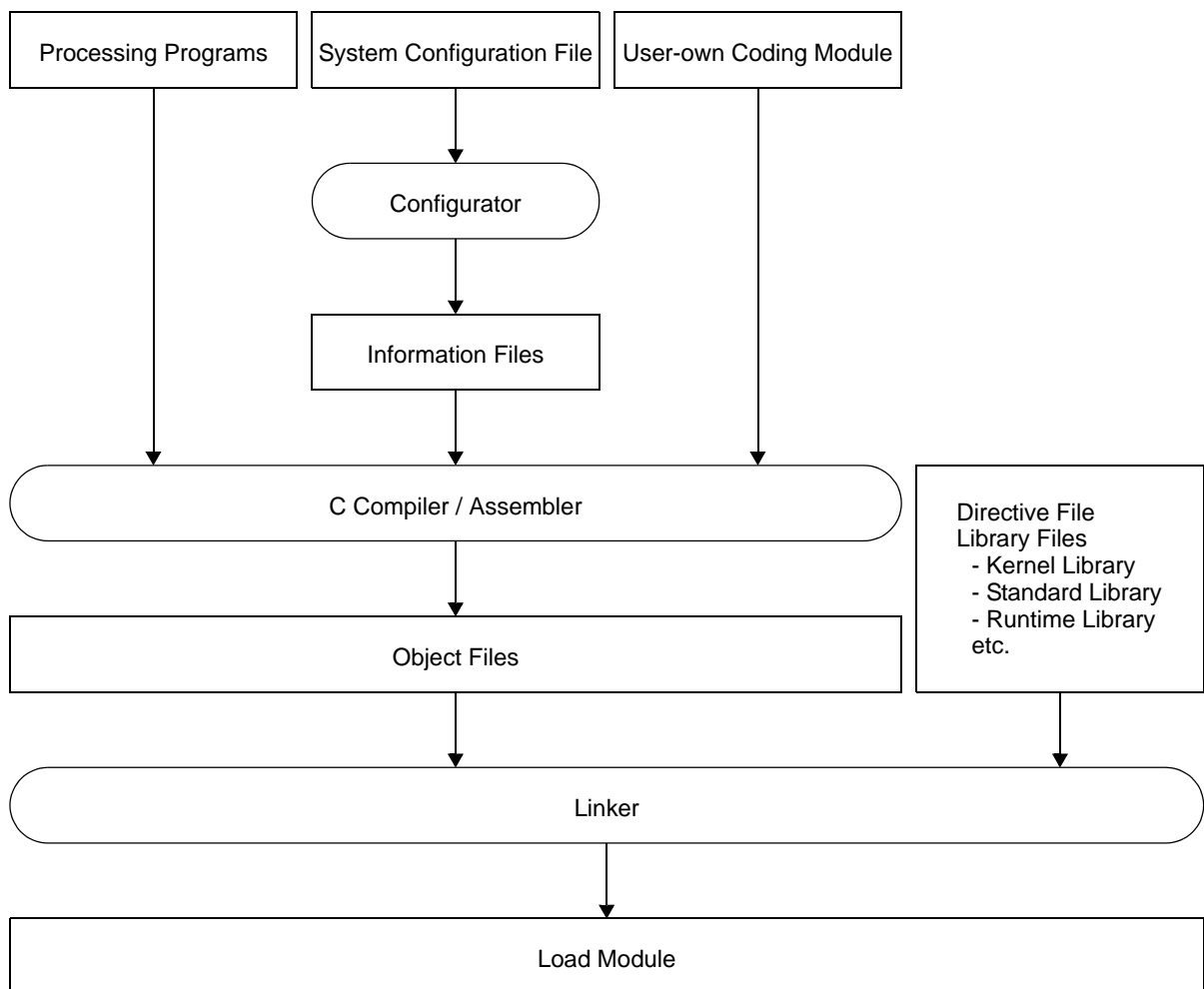
This chapter describes how to build a system (load module) that uses the functions provided by the RX78K0R.

2.1 Outline

System building consists in the creation of a load module using the files (kernel library, etc.) installed on the user development environment (host machine) from the RX78K0R's supply media.

The following shows the procedure for organizing the system.

Figure 2-1 Example of System Construction



2.2 Coding of Processing Program

Code the processing that should be implemented in the system.

In the RX78K0R, the processing program is classified into the following three types, in accordance with the types and purposes of the processing that should be implemented.

- [Tasks](#)

A task is processing program that is not executed unless it is explicitly manipulated via service calls provided by the RX78K0R, unlike other processing programs (cyclic handler and interrupt handler).

Note For details about the task, refer to "[3.2 Tasks](#)".

- [Cyclic Handlers](#)

The cyclic handler is a routine dedicated to cycle processing that is activated periodically at a constant interval (activation cycle).

The RX78K0R handles the cyclic handler as a "non-task (module independent from tasks)". Therefore, even if a task with the highest priority in the system is being executed, the processing is suspended when a specified activation cycle has come, and the control is passed to the cyclic handler.

Note For details about the cyclic handler, refer to "[7.5 Cyclic Handlers](#)".

- [Interrupt Handlers](#)

The interrupt handler is a routine dedicated to interrupt servicing that is activated when an interrupt occurs.

The RX78K0R handles the interrupt handler as a "non-task (module independent from tasks)". Therefore, even if a task with the highest priority in the system is being executed, the processing is suspended when an interrupt occurs, and the control is passed to the interrupt handler.

Note 1 For details about the interrupt handler, refer to "[9.3 Interrupt Handlers](#)".

Note 2 The user must code the interrupt handlers that calls the [Timer Handler](#).

2.3 Coding of System Configuration File

Code the [SYSTEM CONFIGURATION FILE](#) required for creating information files (system information table file, system information header file) that contain data to be provided for the RX78K0R.

Note For details about the system configuration file, refer to "[CHAPTER 13 SYSTEM CONFIGURATION FILE](#)".

2.4 Coding of User-Own Coding Module

Code the user-own coding modules that are extracted to allow the RX78K0R to be supported in various execution environments.

In the RX78K0R, the user-own coding module is classified into the following four types, in accordance with the types and purposes of the processing that should be implemented.

- **Interrupt Entry Processing**

A routine dedicated to entry processing that is extracted from the **INTERRUPT MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS** as a user-own coding module to assign instructions to branch to relevant processing (such as **Interrupt Handlers** or **Boot Processing**), to the vector table address to which the CPU forcibly passes the control when an interrupt occurs.

Note 1 For details about the interrupt entry processing, refer to "9.2 **Interrupt Entry Processing**".

Note 2 For interrupt handlers written using the `#pragma rtos_interrupt` directive, the user is not required to write the relevant interrupt entry processing because the C compiler automatically outputs the interrupt entry processing corresponding to the interrupt request name.

- **Boot Processing**

A routine dedicated to initialization processing that is extracted from the **SYSTEM CONFIGURATION MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS** as a user-own coding module to initialize the minimum required hardware for the RX78K0R to perform processing. It is called from **Interrupt Entry Processing** that is assigned to the vector table address to which the CPU forcibly passes the control when a reset interrupt occurs.

Note For details about the boot processing, refer to "10.2 **Boot Processing**".

- **Initialization Routine**

A routine dedicated to initialization processing that is extracted from the **SYSTEM CONFIGURATION MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS** as a user-own coding module to initialize the hardware dependent on the user execution environment (such as the peripheral controller), and is called from the **Kernel Initialization Module**.

Note For details about the initialization routine, refer to "10.3 **Initialization Routine**".

- **Idle Routine**

A routine dedicated to idle processing that is extracted from the **SCHEDULER** as a user-own coding module to utilize the standby function provided by the CPU (to achieve the low-power consumption system), and is called from the scheduler when there no longer remains a task subject to scheduling by the RX78K0R (task in the RUNNING or READY state) in the system.

Note For details about the idle routine, refer to "11.7 **Idle Routine**".

2.5 Coding of Directive File

Code the directive file used by the user to fix the address allocation done by the linker. In the RX78K0R, the allocation destinations (segment names) of management objects modularized for each function are specified.

The following lists the segment names prescribed in the RX78K0R.

Table 2-1 RX78K0R Segments

Segment Name	ROM/RAM	Segment Attribute	Description
rx78k0r	ROM	CSEG UINTP	Area where the RX78K0R's core processing part and main processing part of service calls provided by the RX78K0R are to be allocated. The start can be aligned at an even address in the area from 0x000c0 to 0x0ffff.
rxinf	ROM	CSEG UINTP	Area where information items such as the RX78K0R version are to be allocated. The start can be aligned at an even address in the area from 0x000c0 to 0x0ffff.
sit	ROM	CSEG PAGE64KP	Area where initial information items related to OS resources that do not change dynamically are allocated as system information tables. The start can be aligned at an even address that does not span a 64K boundary.
sysarea	RAM	DSEG PAGE64KP	Area where information items required to implement the functionalities provided by the RX78K0R and information items related to OS resources that change dynamically are allocated as management objects. The start can be aligned at an even address that does not span a 64K boundary.
stkarea	RAM	DSEG BASEP	Area where the system stack and the task stack are to be allocated. The start can be aligned at an even address in the built-in RAM area from 0xfxxxx to 0xfffeff.
p0area, p1area, p2area, p3area	RAM	DSEG PAGE64KP	Area where fixed-sized memory pools are to be allocated. The start can be aligned at an even address that does not span a 64K boundary.

Note 1 The stkarea segment can be allocated only to the near area (0xf0000 to 0xffe1f).

Note 2 Specification of p0area, p1area, p2area and p3area is required only when the relevant segment names are specified in [Fixed-sized memory pool information](#).

Note 3 The RX78K0R occupies the 8-byte area from the saddr area (0xffe20 to 0xffff1f). Therefore, the available saddr area for the user is up to 247 bytes.

Note 4 For details about the directive file, refer to "RA78K0R Assembler Package Operation User's Manual".

2.5.1 rx78k0r segment

The size of the rx78k0r segment is approximately 1 KB to 8 KB depends on the service calls used in the processing program.

2.5.2 rxinf segment

The size of the rxinf segment is approximately 1 KB.

2.5.3 sit segment

The following shows an expression required for estimating the sit segment size (unit: bytes).

$$\text{sit} = (\text{tsknum} * 10) + \text{semnum} + \text{flgnum} + (\text{mpfnum} * 8) + (\text{cycnum} * 8) + (\text{kindnum} * 4) + 15$$

tsknum: Total amount of [Task information](#)
semnum: Total amount of [Semaphore information](#)
flgnum: Total amount of [Eventflag information](#)
mpfnum: Total amount of [Fixed-sized memory pool information](#)
kindnum: Total number of types defined in the system configuration file among five types of information related to OS resources ([Semaphore information](#), [Eventflag information](#), [Mailbox information](#), [Fixed-sized memory pool information](#) and [Cyclic handler information](#))

2.5.4 sysarea segment

The following shows an expression required for estimating the sysarea segment size (unit: bytes).

The expression varies depending on whether or not [Semaphore information](#) is defined in the system configuration file.

[When semaphore information is defined]

$$\text{sysarea} = \text{align2}(\text{maxtpri} + 1) + \text{align2}\{(\text{tsknum} * 24) + (\text{semnum} * 2) + 1\} + \text{align2}(\text{flgnum} * 3) + (\text{mbxnum} * 8) + \text{align2}(\text{primbx}) + (\text{mpfnum} * 4) + (\text{cycnum} * 8) + 40$$

[When semaphore information is not defined]

$$\text{sysarea} = \text{align2}(\text{maxtpri} + 1) + (\text{tsknum} * 24) + \text{align2}(\text{flgnum} * 3) + (\text{mbxnum} * 8) + \text{align2}(\text{primbx}) + (\text{mpfnum} * 4) + (\text{cycnum} * 8) + 40$$

maxtpri: Priority range specified in [Task priority information](#)
tsknum: Total amount of [Task information](#)
semnum: Total amount of [Semaphore information](#)
flgnum: Total amount of [Eventflag information](#)
mbxnum: Total amount of [Mailbox information](#)
primbx: Total amount of [Mailbox information](#) for which the priority is specified for the attribute (message queuing method)
mpfnum: Total amount of [Fixed-sized memory pool information](#)
cycnum: Total amount of [Cyclic handler information](#)

2.5.5 stkarea segment

The following shows an expression required for estimating the stkarea segment size (unit: bytes).

$$\text{stkarea} = \sum_{k=1}^{\text{tsknum}} (\text{stksz}_k + 28) + (\text{sys_stksz} + 2)$$

tsknum: Total amount of [Task information](#)
stksz_k: Stack size specified in [Task information](#)
sys_stksz: Stack size specified in [System stack information](#)

2.5.6 p0area, p1area, p2area, p3area segment

The following shows an expression required for estimating the size of the p0area, p1area, p2area, and p3area segments (unit: bytes).

$$pXarea = \sum_{k=1}^{mpfnum} (blkcnt_k * blksize_k)$$

mpfnum: Total number of segment units for [Fixed-sized memory pool information](#)
blkcnt_k: Number of fixed-sized memory blocks specified in [Fixed-sized memory pool information](#)
blksize_k: Block size specified in [Fixed-sized memory pool information](#)

2.6 Creating Load Module

Run a build on CubeSuite for files created in sections from "[2.2 Coding of Processing Program](#)" to "[2.5 Coding of Directive File](#)", and library files provided by RX78K0R and CA78K0R, to create a load module.

The following lists the files required for creating load modules.

1) Create or load a project

Create a new project, or load an existing one.

Note See RX Series Start User's Manual or CubeSuite Start User's Manual for details about creating a new project or loading an existing one.

2) Set a build target project

When making settings for or running a build, set the active project.

If there is no subproject, the project is always active.

Note See CubeSuite 78K0R Build User's Manual for details about setting the active project.

3) Set build target files

For the project, add or remove build target files and update the dependencies.

Note See CubeSuite 78K0R Build User's Manual for details about adding or removing build target files for the project and updating the dependencies.

The following lists the files required for creating a load module.

- C/assembly language source files created in "[2.2 Coding of Processing Program](#)"

- [Tasks](#), [Cyclic Handlers](#), [Interrupt Handlers](#)

- System configuration file created in "[2.3 Coding of System Configuration File](#)"

- System configuration file

Note Specify "cfg" as the extension of the system configuration file name.

If the extension is different, "cfg" is automatically added (for example, if you designate "aaa.c" as a file name, the file is named as "aaa.c.cfg").

- C/assembly language source files created in "[2.4 Coding of User-Own Coding Module](#)"

- [Interrupt Entry Processing](#), [Boot Processing](#), [Initialization Routine](#), [Idle Routine](#)

- Directive file created in "[2.5 Coding of Directive File](#)"

- Directive file

- Library files provided by the RX78K0R

- Kernel library

- Library files provided by the C compiler/assembler package

- Standard library, runtime library, etc.

Note 1 If the system configuration file is added to the [Project Tree panel](#), the Realtime OS generated files node is appeared.

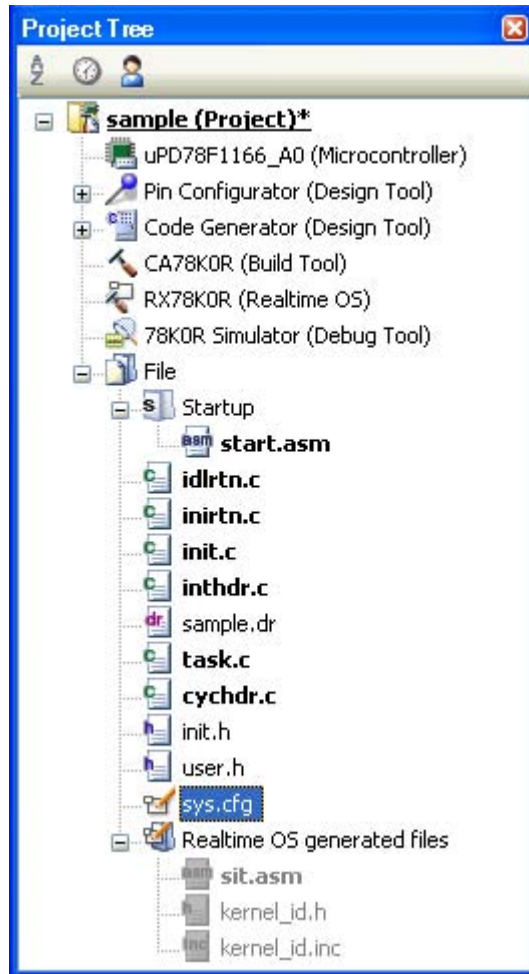
The following information files are appeared under the Realtime OS generated files node. However, these files are not generated at this point in time.

- System information table file

- System information header file (for C language)

- System information header file (for assembly language)

Figure 2-2 Project Tree Panel (After Adding sys.cfg)



Note 2 When replacing the system configuration file, first remove the added system configuration file from the project, then add another one again.

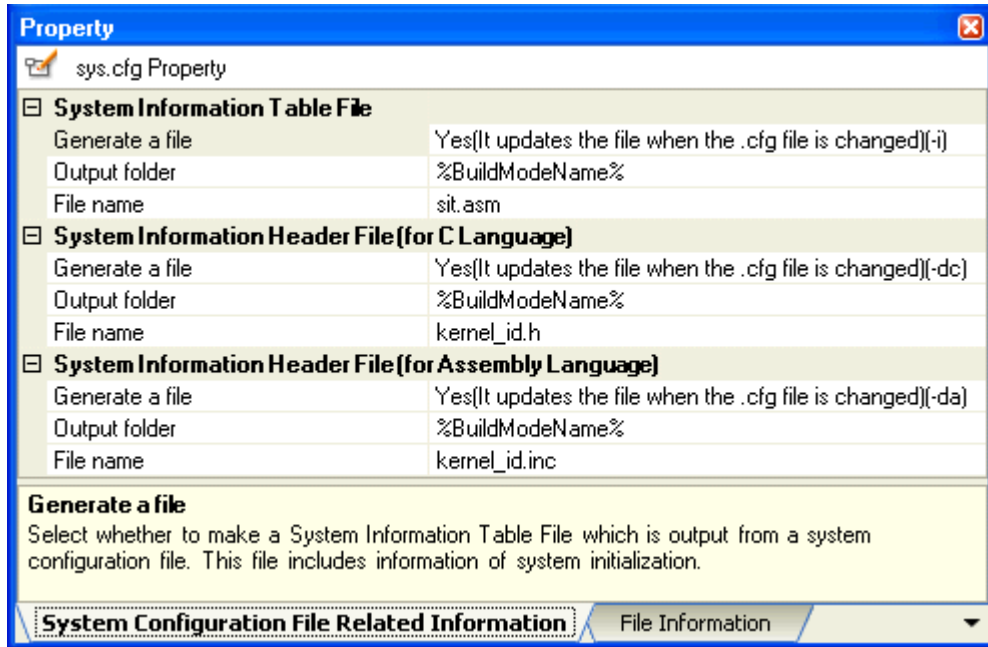
Note 3 Although it is possible to add more than one system configuration files to a project, only the first file added is enabled. Note that if you remove the enabled file from the project, the remaining additional files will not be enabled; you must therefore add them again.

4) Set the output of information files

Select the system configuration file on the project tree to open the [Property panel](#).

On the [\[System Configuration File Related Information\] tab](#), set the output of information files (system information table file and system information header files).

Figure 2-3 Property Panel: [System Configuration File Related Information] Tab



5) Specify the output of a load module file

Set the output of a load module file as the product of the build.

Note See CubeSuite 78K0R Build User's Manual for details about specifying the output of a load module file.

6) Set build options

Set the options for the compiler, assembler, linker, and the like.

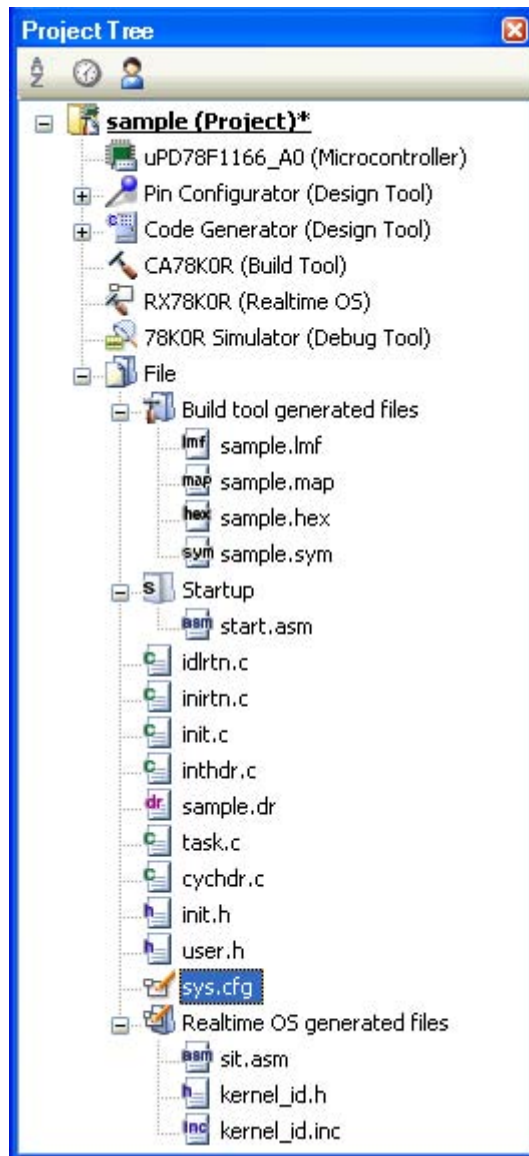
Note See CubeSuite 78K0R Build User's Manual for details about setting build options.

7) Run a build

Run a build to create a load module.

Note See CubeSuite 78K0R Build User's Manual for details about running a build.

Figure 2-4 Project Tree Panel (After Running Build)



8) Save the project

Save the setting information of the project to the project file.

Note See CubeSuite Start User's Manual for details about saving the project.

2.7 Embedding System

If the output of hex files are set in 4) of "2.6 Creating Load Module", hex files are created. After that, embed the modules to the system by using a flash programmer.

CHAPTER 3 TASK MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS

This chapter describes the task management functions performed by the RX78K0R.

3.1 Outline

The task control functions provided by the RX78K0R include a function to reference task statuses, in addition to a function to manipulate task statuses.

3.2 Tasks

A task is processing program that is not executed unless it is explicitly manipulated via service calls provided by the RX78K0R, unlike other processing programs (cyclic handler and interrupt handler), and is called from the scheduler.

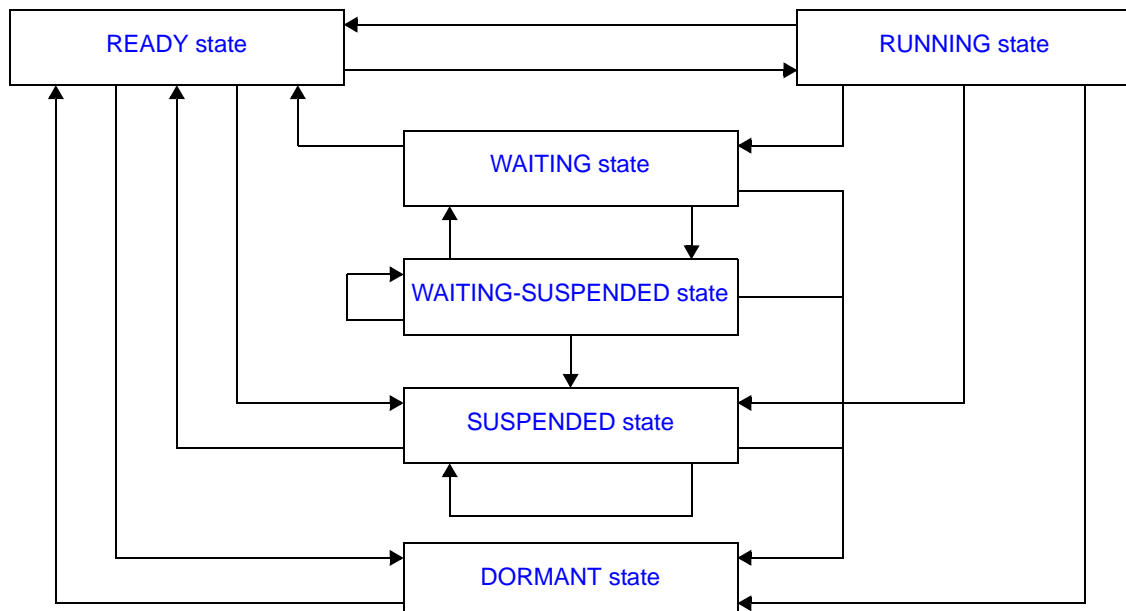
Note The execution environment information required for a task's execution is called "task context". During task execution switching, the task context of the task currently under execution by the RX78K0R is saved and the task context of the next task to be executed is loaded.

3.2.1 Task state

Tasks enter various states according to the acquisition status for the OS resources required for task execution and the occurrence/non-occurrence of various events. In this process, the current state of each task must be checked and managed by the RX78K0R.

The RX78K0R classifies task states into the following six types.

Figure 3-1 Task State



- DORMANT state

State of a task that is not active, or the state entered by a task whose processing has ended.

A task in the DORMANT state, while being under management of the RX78K0R, is not subject to RX78K0R scheduling.

- READY state

State of a task for which the preparations required for processing execution have been completed, but since another task with a higher priority level or a task with the same priority level is currently being processed, the task is waiting to be given the CPU's use right.

- RUNNING state

State of a task that has acquired the CPU use right and is currently being processed.

Only one task can be in the running state at one time in the entire system.

- WAITING state

State in which processing execution has been suspended because conditions required for execution are not satisfied. Resumption of processing from the WAITING state starts from the point where the processing execution was suspended. The value of information required for resumption (such as task context) immediately before suspension is therefore restored.

In the RX78K0R, the WAITING state is classified into the following six types according to their required conditions and managed.

Table 3-1 Waiting States

Waiting States	Description
Sleeping state	A task enters this state if the counter for the task (registering the number of times the wakeup request has been issued) indicates 0x0 upon the issuance of a slp_tsk or tslp_tsk .
Delayed state	A task enters this state upon the issuance of a dly_tsk .
Waiting state for a semaphore resource	A task enters this state if it cannot acquire a resource from the relevant semaphore upon the issuance of a wai_sem or twai_sem .
Waiting state for an eventflag	A task enters this state if a relevant eventflag does not satisfy a predetermined condition upon the issuance of a wai_flg or twai_flg .
Receiving waiting state for a mailbox	A task enters this state if cannot receive a message from the relevant mailbox upon the issuance of a rcv_mbx or trcv_mbx .
Waiting state for a fixed-sized memory block	A task enters this state if it cannot acquire a fixed-sized memory block from the relevant memory pool upon the issuance of a get_mpf or tget_mpf .

- SUSPENDED state

State in which processing execution has been suspended forcibly.

Resumption of processing from the SUSPENDED state starts from the point where the processing execution was suspended. The value of information required for resumption (such as task context) immediately before suspension is therefore restored.

- WAITING-SUSPENDED state

State in which the WAITING and SUSPENDED states are combined.

A task enters the SUSPENDED state when the WAITING state is cancelled, or enters the WAITING state when the SUSPENDED state is cancelled.

3.2.2 Task priority

A priority level that determines the order in which that task will be processed in relation to the other tasks is assigned to each task.

As a result, in the RX78K0R, the task that has the highest priority level of all the tasks that have entered an executable state (RUNNING state or READY state) is selected and given the CPU use right.

In the RX78K0R, the following two types of priorities are used for management purposes.

- Task initial priority
Priority set when a task is created.
- Task current priority
This is the general term used to describe the priority level of a task from the time it enters the READY state from the DORMANT state until it returns to the DORMANT state.
Therefore, the current priority level of a task that enters the READY state from the DORMANT state has the same value as the "initial priority level," and the current priority level when the priority level is changed by issuing [chg_pri](#) or [ichg_pri](#) is the same value as the "priority level after change".

Note 1 In the RX78K0R, a task having a smaller priority number is given a higher priority.

Note 2 The priority that can be specified in a system is in the priority range specified in [Task priority information](#).

3.2.3 Create task

In the RX78K0R, the method of creating a task is limited to "static creation by the [Kernel Initialization Module](#)".

Tasks therefore cannot be created dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

- Static create
Static task creation is realized by defining [Task information](#) in the system configuration file.
The RX78K0R executes task creation processing based on data stored in information files, using the [Kernel Initialization Module](#), and handles the created tasks as management targets.

3.2.4 Delete task

In the RX78K0R, tasks created statically by the [Kernel Initialization Module](#) cannot be deleted dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

3.2.5 Basic form of tasks

When coding a task, use a void function with one VP_INT argument (any function name is fine) using the #pragma rtos_task directive.

The extended information specified with [Task information](#), or the start code specified when `sta_tsk` or `ista_tsk` is issued, is set for the `exinf` argument.

The following shows the basic form of tasks.

[C Language]

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>           /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>        /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    /* ..... */                /*Main processing*/

    ext_tsk ( );                  /*Terminate invoking task*/
}
```

[Assembly Language]

```
$INCLUDE      (kernel.inc)          ;Standard header file definition
$INCLUDE      (kernel_id.inc)       ;System information header file definition

PUBLIC  _func_task
CSEG
_func_task:
    PUSH      BC                    ;Stores the higher 2 bytes of argument exinf into stack
    PUSH      AX                    ;Stores the lower 2 bytes of argument exinf into stack

    ; .....                        ;Main processing

    BR        !!_ext_tsk            ;Terminate invoking task
END
```

3.2.6 Internal processing of task

In the RX78K0R, original dispatch processing (task scheduling) is executed during task switching. Therefore, note the following points when coding tasks.

- Coding method
Code tasks using C or assembly language in the format shown in "[3.2.5 Basic form of tasks](#)".
- Stack switching
In the RX78K0R, switching to the stack for the switching destination task (task stack) is executed during task switching.
The user is therefore not required to code processing related to stack switching in tasks.
- Interrupt status
In the RX78K0R, the initial interrupt state specified in [Task information](#) when a task is switched from the READY state to the RUNNING state.
To change (disable or enable) the interrupt status in the task, writing of #pragma DI or #pragma EI directive and calling of the DI or EI function are therefore required.
- Service call issuance
Service calls that can be issued in tasks are limited to the service calls that can be issued from tasks.

Note For details on the valid issuance range of each service call, refer to [Table 12-8](#) to [Table 12-16](#).

3.3 Activate Task

The RX78K0R provides two types of interfaces for task activation: queuing an activation request queuing and not queuing an activation request.

3.3.1 Queuing an activation request

A task (queuing an activation request) is activated by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- [act_tsk](#), [iact_tsk](#)

These service calls move a task specified by parameter *tskid* from the DORMANT state to the READY state.

As a result, the target task is queued at the end on the ready queue corresponding to the initial priority and becomes subject to scheduling by the RX78K0R.

If the target task has been moved to a state other than the DORMANT state when this service call is issued, this service call does not move the state but increments the activation request counter (by added 0x1 to the wakeup request counter).

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID        tskid = ID_tskA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ..... */

    act_tsk ( tskid );            /*Activate task (queues an activation request)*/

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note 1 The activation request counter managed by the RX78K0R is configured in 7-bit widths. If the number of activation requests exceeds the maximum count value 127 as a result of issuing this service call, the counter manipulation processing is therefore not performed but "E_QOVR" is returned.

Note 2 An extended information "[Extended information: exinf](#)" is passed to the task activated by issuing this service call.

3.3.2 Not queuing an activation request

A task (not queuing an activation request) is activated by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- **sta_tsk, ista_tsk**

These service calls move a task specified by parameter *tskid* from the DORMANT state to the READY state.

As a result, the target task is queued at the end on the ready queue corresponding to the initial priority and becomes subject to scheduling by the RX78K0R.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID        tskid = ID_tskA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    VP_INT    stacd = 1048575;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ..... */

    sta_tsk ( tskid, stacd );    /*Activate task (does not queue an activation
                                request)*/

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note 1 This service call does not perform queuing of activation requests. If the target task is in a state other than the DORMANT state, the counter manipulation processing is therefore not performed but "E_OBJ" is returned.

Note 2 An start code "stacd" is passed to the task activated by issuing this service call.

3.4 Cancel Task Activation Requests

An activation request is cancelled by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- `can_act`

This service call cancels all of the activation requests queued to the task specified by parameter *tskid* (sets the activation request counter to 0x0).

When this service call is terminated normally, the number of cancelled activation requests is returned.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER_UINT ercd;                 /*Declares variable*/
    ID      tskid = ID_tskA;      /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ..... */

    ercd = can_act ( tskid );      /*Cancel task activation requests*/

    if ( ercd >= 0x0 ) {
        /* ..... */             /*Normal termination processing*/
    }

    /* ..... */
}
```

3.5 Terminate Task

The RX78K0R provides two types of interfaces for task termination: termination of invoking task and forced termination of other tasks.

3.5.1 Terminate invoking task

An invoking task is terminated by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- [ext_tsk](#)

This service call moves an invoking task from the RUNNING state to the DORMANT state.

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and excluded from the RX78K0R scheduling subject. If an activation request has been queued to the invoking task (the activation request counter is not set to 0x0) when this service call is issued, this service call moves the task from the RUNNING state to the DORMANT state, decrements the wakeup request counter (by subtracting 0x1 from the wakeup request counter), and then moves the task from the DORMANT state to the READY state.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    /* ..... */

    ext_tsk ( );                  /*Terminate invoking task*/
}
```

Note 1 This service call does not return the OS resource that the invoking task acquired by issuing a service call such as [sig_sem](#) or [get_mpf](#). The OS resource have been acquired must therefore be returned before issuing this service call.

Note 2 When moving a task from the RUNNING state to the DORMANT state, this service call initializes the following information to values that are set during task creation.

- Priority (current priority)
- Wakeup request count
- Suspension count
- Interrupt status

Note 3 If the return instruction is written in a task, it executes the same operation as this service call.

Note 4 In the RX78K0R, code efficiency is enhanced by coding the return instruction as a "Terminate invoking task".

3.5.2 Terminate task

Other tasks are forcibly terminated by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- **ter_tsk**

This service call forcibly moves a task specified by parameter *tskid* to the DORMANT state.

As a result, the target task is excluded from the RX78K0R scheduling subject.

If an activation request has been queued to the target task (the activation request counter is not set to 0x0) when this service call is issued, this service call moves the task to the DORMANT state, decrements the wakeup request counter (by subtracting 0x1 from the wakeup request counter), and then moves the task from the DORMANT state to the READY state.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID        tskid = ID_tskA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ..... */

    ter_tsk ( tskid );            /*Terminate task*/

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note 1 This service call does not return the OS resource that the target task acquired by issuing a service call such as [sig_sem](#) or [get_mpf](#). The OS resource have been acquired must therefore be returned before issuing this service call.

Note 2 When moving a task to the DORMANT state, this service call initializes the following information to values that are set during task creation.

- Priority (current priority)
- Wakeup request count
- Suspension count
- Interrupt status

3.6 Change Task Priority

The priority is changed by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- `chg_pri`, `ichg_pri`

These service calls change the priority of the task specified by parameter *tskid* (current priority) to a value specified by parameter *tskpri*.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      tskid = ID_tskA;      /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    PRI      tskpri = 15;         /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ..... */

    chg_pri ( tskid, tskpri );    /*Change task priority*/

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note If the target task is in the RUNNING or READY state after this service call is issued, this service call re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority specified by parameter *tskpri*, following priority change processing.

3.7 Reference Task State

A task status is referenced by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- [ref_tsk](#)

Stores task state packet (such as current status) of the task specified by parameter *tskid* in the area specified by parameter *pk_rtsk*.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID        tskid = ID_tskA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    T_RTSK    pk_rtsk;            /*Declares data structure*/
    STAT      tskstat;            /*Declares variable*/
    PRI       tskpri;             /*Declares variable*/
    STAT      tskwait;            /*Declares variable*/
    ID        wobjid;             /*Declares variable*/
    UINT      actcnt;              /*Declares variable*/
    UINT      wupcnt;             /*Declares variable*/
    UINT      suscnt;             /*Declares variable*/

    /* ..... */

    ref_tsk ( tskid, &pk_rtsk ); /*Reference task state*/

    tskstat = pk_rtsk.tskstat;    /*Reference task current state*/
    tskpri = pk_rtsk.tskpri;      /*Reference task current priority*/
    tskwait = pk_rtsk.tskwait;    /*Reference reason for waiting*/
    wobjid = pk_rtsk.wobjid;      /*Reference object ID number for which the task is
                                   waiting*/
    actcnt = pk_rtsk.actcnt;      /*Reference activation request count*/
    wupcnt = pk_rtsk.wupcnt;      /*Reference wakeup request count*/
    suscnt = pk_rtsk.suscnt;      /*Reference suspension count*/

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note For details about the task state packet, refer to "[12.5.1 Task state packet](#)".

CHAPTER 4 TASK DEPENDENT SYNCHRONIZATION FUNCTIONS

This chapter describes the task dependent synchronization functions performed by the RX78K0R.

4.1 Outline

The RX78K0R provides several task-dependent synchronization functions.

4.2 Put Task to Sleep

A task is moved to the sleeping state (waiting forever or with timeout) by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- `slp_tsk`

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and excluded from the RX78K0R scheduling subject. If a wakeup request has been queued to the target task (the wakeup request counter is not set to 0x0) when this service call is issued, this service call does not move the state but decrements the wakeup request counter (by subtracting 0x1 from the wakeup request counter).

The sleeping state is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Sleeping State Cancel Operation	Return Value
A wakeup request was issued as a result of issuing <code>wup_tsk</code> .	E_OK
A wakeup request was issued as a result of issuing <code>iwup_tsk</code> .	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept <code>rel_wai</code> while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept <code>irel_wai</code> while waiting).	E_RLWAI

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER        ercd;               /*Declares variable*/

    /* ..... */

    ercd = slp_tsk ( );           /*Put task to sleep (waiting forever)*/

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ..... */             /*Normal termination processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_RLWAI ) {
        /* ..... */             /*Forced termination processing*/
    }

    /* ..... */
}
```


- `tslp_tsk`

This service call moves an invoking task from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (sleeping state). As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and excluded from the RX78K0R scheduling subject. If a wakeup request has been queued to the target task (the wakeup request counter is not set to 0x0) when this service call is issued, this service call does not move the state but decrements the wakeup request counter (by subtracting 0x1 from the wakeup request counter).

The sleeping state is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Sleeping State Cancel Operation	Return Value
A wakeup request was issued as a result of issuing <code>wup_tsk</code> .	E_OK
A wakeup request was issued as a result of issuing <code>iwup_tsk</code> .	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept <code>rel_wai</code> while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept <code>irel_wai</code> while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Polling failure or timeout.	E_TMOUT

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;                /*Declares variable*/
    TMO      tmout = 3600;        /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ..... */

    ercd = tslp_tsk ( tmout );    /*Put task to sleep (with timeout)*/

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Normal termination processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_RLWAI ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Forced termination processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_TMOUT ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Timeout processing*/
    }

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note When TMO_FEVR is specified for wait time *tmout*, processing equivalent to `slp_tsk` will be executed.

4.3 Wakeup Task

A task is woken up by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- `wup_tsk`, `iwup_tsk`

These service calls cancel the WAITING state (sleeping state) of the task specified by parameter *tskid*.

As a result, the target task is moved from the sleeping state to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the SUSPENDED state.

If the target task is in a state other than the sleeping state when this service call is issued, this service call does not move the state but increments the wakeup request counter (by added 0x1 to the wakeup request counter).

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID        tskid = ID_tskA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ..... */

    wup_tsk ( tskid );            /*Wakeup task*/

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note 1 If the target task is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 The wakeup request counter managed by the RX78K0R is configured in 7-bit widths. If the number of wakeup requests exceeds the maximum count value 127 as a result of issuing this service call, the counter manipulation processing is therefore not performed but "E_QOVR" is returned.

4.4 Cancel Task Wakeup Requests

A wakeup request is cancelled by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- [can_wup](#), [ican_wup](#)

These service calls cancel all of the wakeup requests queued to the task specified by parameter *tskid* (the wakeup request counter is set to 0x0).

When this service call is terminated normally, the number of cancelled wakeup requests is returned.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER_UINT ercd;                /*Declares variable*/
    ID      tskid = ID_tskA;     /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ..... */

    ercd = can_wup ( tskid );    /*Cancel task wakeup requests*/

    if ( ercd >= 0x0 ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Normal termination processing*/
    }

    /* ..... */
}
```

4.5 Release Task from Waiting

The WAITING state is forcibly cancelled by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- `rel_wai`, `irel_wai`

These service calls forcibly cancel the WAITING state of the task specified by parameter *tskid*.

As a result, the target task unlinked from the wait queue and is moved from the WAITING state to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the SUSPENDED state.

"E_RLWAI" is returned from the service call that triggered the move to the WAITING state (`slp_tsk`, `wai_sem`, or the like) to the task whose WAITING state is cancelled by this service call.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID        tskid = ID_tskA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ..... */

    rel_wai ( tskid );            /*Release task from waiting*/

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note 1 If the target task is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 This service call does not perform queuing of forced cancellation requests. If the target task is in a state other than the WAITING or WAITING-SUSPENDED state, "E_OBJ" is returned.

4.6 Suspend Task

A task is moved to the SUSPENDED state by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- `sus_tsk`, `isus_tsk`

These service calls add 0x1 to the suspend request counter for the task specified by parameter *tskid*, and then move the target task from the RUNNING state to the SUSPENDED state, from the READY state to the SUSPENDED state, or from the WAITING state to the WAITING-SUSPENDED state.

If the target task has moved to the SUSPENDED or WAITING-SUSPENDED state when this service call is issued, the counter manipulation processing is not performed but only the suspend request counter increment processing is executed.

The SUSPENDED state is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

SUSPENDED State Cancel Operation	Return Value
A cancel request was issued as a result of issuing <code>rsm_tsk</code> .	E_OK
A cancel request was issued as a result of issuing <code>irms_tsk</code> .	E_OK
Forced release from suspended (accept <code>frsm_tsk</code> while suspended).	E_OK
Forced release from suspended (accept <code>ifrm_tsk</code> while suspended).	E_OK

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID        tskid = ID_tskA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ..... */

    sus_tsk ( tskid );            /*Suspend task*/

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note 1 If the target task is the invoking task when this service call is issued, it is unlinked from the ready queue and excluded from the RX78K0R scheduling subject.

Note 2 The suspend request counter managed by the RX78K0R is configured in 7-bit widths. If the number of suspend requests exceeds the maximum count value 127 as a result of issuing this service call, the counter manipulation processing is therefore not performed but "E_QOVR" is returned.

4.7 Resume Suspended Task

The SUSPENDED state is cancelled by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- `rsm_tsk`, `irsm_tsk`

This service call subtracts 0x1 from the suspend request counter for the task specified by parameter *tskid*, and then cancels the SUSPENDED state of the target task.

As a result, the target task is moved from the SUSPENDED state to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the WAITING state.

If a suspend request is queued (subtraction result is other than 0x0) when this service call is issued, the counter manipulation processing is not performed but only the suspend request counter decrement processing is executed.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>           /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>        /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID        tskid = ID_tskA;     /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ..... */

    rsm_tsk ( tskid );             /*Resume suspended task*/

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note 1 If the target task is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 This service call does not perform queuing of cancellation requests. If the target task is in a state other than the SUSPENDED or WAITING-SUSPENDED state, "E_OBJ" is therefore returned.

- [frsm_tsk](#), [ifrsn_tsk](#)

These service calls set the suspend request counter for the task specified by parameter *tskid* to 0x1 f, and then forcibly cancel the SUSPENDED state of the target task.

As a result, the target task is moved from the SUSPENDED state to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the WAITING state.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID        tskid = ID_tskA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ..... */

    frsm_tsk ( tskid );           /*Forcibly resume suspended task*/

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note 1 If the target task is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 This service call does not perform queuing of forced cancellation requests. If the target task is in a state other than the SUSPENDED or WAITING-SUSPENDED state, "E_OBJ" is therefore returned.

4.8 Delay Task

A task is moved to the delayed state by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- `dly_tsk`

This service call moves the invoking task from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (delayed state).

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and excluded from the RX78K0R scheduling subject.

The delayed state is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Delayed State Cancel Operation	Return Value
Delay time specified by parameter <i>dlytim</i> has elapsed.	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept <code>rel_wai</code> while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept <code>irel_wai</code> while waiting).	E_RLWAI

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;                /*Declares variable*/
    RELTIM  dlytim = 3600;        /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ..... */

    ercd = dly_tsk ( dlytim );    /*Delay task*/

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ..... */            /*Normal termination processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_RLWAI ) {
        /* ..... */            /*Forced termination processing*/
    }

    /* ..... */
}
```


CHAPTER 5 SYNCHRONIZATION AND COMMUNICATION FUNCTIONS

This chapter describes the synchronization and communication functions performed by the RX78K0R.

5.1 Outline

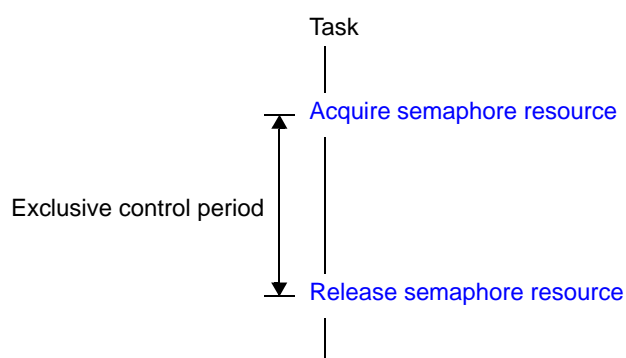
The synchronization and communication functions of the RX78K0R consist of [Semaphores](#), [Eventflags](#), and [Mailboxes](#) that are provided as means for realizing exclusive control, queuing, and communication among tasks.

5.2 Semaphores

In the RX78K0R, non-negative number counting semaphores are provided as a means (exclusive control function) for preventing contention for limited resources (hardware devices, library function, etc.) arising from the required conditions of simultaneously running tasks.

The following shows a processing flow when using a semaphore.

Figure 5-1 Processing Flow (Semaphore)



5.2.1 Create semaphore

In the RX78K0R, the method of creating a semaphore is limited to "static creation by the [Kernel Initialization Module](#)". Semaphores therefore cannot be created dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

- Static create

Static semaphore creation is realized by defining [Semaphore information](#) in the system configuration file.

The RX78K0R executes semaphore creation processing based on data stored in information files, using the [Kernel Initialization Module](#), and handles the created semaphores as management targets.

5.2.2 Delete semaphore

In the RX78K0R, semaphores created statically by the [Kernel Initialization Module](#) cannot be deleted dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

5.2.3 Release semaphore resource

A resource is returned by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- [sig_sem](#), [isig_sem](#)

These service calls return the resource to the semaphore specified by parameter *semid* (adds 0x1 to the semaphore counter).

If a task is queued in the wait queue of the target semaphore when this service call is issued, the counter manipulation processing is not performed but the resource is passed to the relevant task (first task of wait queue).

As a result, the relevant task is unlinked from the wait queue and is moved from the WAITING state (waiting state for a semaphore resource) to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the SUSPENDED state.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      semid = ID_semA;      /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ..... */

    sig_sem ( semid );            /*Release semaphore resource*/

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note 1 If the first task linked in the wait queue is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 The semaphore counter managed by the RX78K0R is configured in 7-bit widths. If the number of resources exceeds the maximum count value 127 as a result of issuing this service call, the counter manipulation processing is therefore not performed but "E_QOVR" is returned.

5.2.4 Acquire semaphore resource

A resource is acquired (waiting forever, polling, or with timeout) by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- `wai_sem`

This service call acquires a resource from the semaphore specified by parameter *semid* (subtracts 0x1 from the semaphore counter).

If a resource could not be acquired from the target semaphore (semaphore counter is set to 0x0) when this service call is issued, the counter manipulation processing is not performed but the invoking task is queued to the target semaphore wait queue in the order of resource acquisition request (FIFO order).

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (waiting state for a semaphore resource).

The waiting state for a semaphore state is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Waiting State for a Semaphore State Cancel Operation	Return Value
The resource was returned to the target semaphore as a result of issuing <code>sig_sem</code> .	E_OK
The resource was returned to the target semaphore as a result of issuing <code>isig_sem</code> .	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept <code>rel_wai</code> while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept <code>irel_wai</code> while waiting).	E_RLWAI

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;                /*Declares variable*/
    ID      semid = ID_semA;      /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ..... */

    ercd = wai_sem ( semid );     /*Acquire semaphore resource (waiting forever)*/

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Normal termination processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_RLWAI ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Forced termination processing*/
    }

    /* ..... */
}
```

- [pol_sem](#)

This service call acquires a resource from the semaphore specified by parameter *semid* (subtracts 0x1 from the semaphore counter).

If a resource could not be acquired from the target semaphore (semaphore counter is set to 0x0) when this service call is issued, the counter manipulation processing is not performed but "E_TMOU" is returned.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;                /*Declares variable*/
    ID      semid = ID_semA;      /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ..... */

    ercd = pol_sem ( semid );     /*Acquire semaphore resource (polling)*/

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Polling success processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_TMOU ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Polling failure processing*/
    }

    /* ..... */
}
```

- [twai_sem](#)

This service call acquires a resource from the semaphore specified by parameter *semid* (subtracts 0x1 from the semaphore counter).

If a resource could not be acquired from the target semaphore (semaphore counter is set to 0x0) when this service call is issued, the counter manipulation processing is not performed but the invoking task is queued to the target semaphore wait queue in the order of resource acquisition request (FIFO order).

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (waiting state for a semaphore resource).

The waiting state for a semaphore resource is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Waiting State for a Semaphore Resource Cancel Operation	Return Value
The resource was returned to the target semaphore as a result of issuing sig_sem .	E_OK
The resource was returned to the target semaphore as a result of issuing isig_sem .	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Polling failure or timeout.	E_TMOUT

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;                /*Declares variable*/
    ID      semid = ID_semA;      /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    TMO      tmout = 3600;        /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ..... */

                                /*Acquire semaphore resource (with timeout)*/
    ercd = twai_sem ( semid, tmout );

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Normal termination processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_RLWAI ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Forced termination processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_TMOUT ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Timeout processing*/
    }

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note When TMO_FEVR is specified for wait time *tmout*, processing equivalent to [wai_sem](#) will be executed.
When TMO_POL is specified, processing equivalent to [pol_sem](#) will be executed.

5.2.5 Reference semaphore state

A semaphore status is referenced by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- [ref_sem](#)

Stores semaphore state packet (such as existence of waiting tasks) of the semaphore specified by parameter *semid* in the area specified by parameter *pk_rsem*.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID        semid = ID_semA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    T_RSEM    pk_rsem;           /*Declares data structure*/
    ID        wtskid;            /*Declares variable*/
    UINT      semcnt;            /*Declares variable*/

    /* ..... */

    ref_sem ( semid, &pk_rsem ); /*Reference semaphore state*/

    wtskid = pk_rsem.wtskid;      /*Reference ID number of the task at the head of
                                   the wait queue*/
    semcnt = pk_rsem.semcnt;      /*Reference current resource count*/

    /* ..... */
}
```

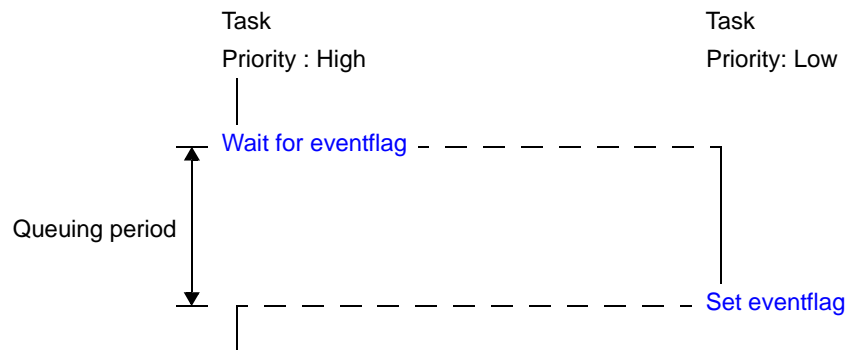
Note For details about the semaphore state packet, refer to "[12.5.2 Semaphore state packet](#)".

5.3 Eventflags

The RX78K0R provides 16-bit eventflags as a queuing function for tasks, such as keeping the tasks waiting for execution, until the results of the execution of a given processing program are output.

The following shows a processing flow when using an eventflag.

Figure 5-2 Processing Flow (Eventflag)



5.3.1 Create eventflag

In the RX78K0R, the method of creating an eventflag is limited to "static creation by the [Kernel Initialization Module](#)".

Eventflags therefore cannot be created dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

- Static create

Static eventflag creation is realized by defining [Eventflag information](#) in the system configuration file.

The RX78K0R executes eventflag creation processing based on data stored in information files, using the [Kernel Initialization Module](#), and handles the created eventflags as management targets.

Note In the RX78K0R, "0x0" is the initial bit pattern for eventflag creation processing.

5.3.2 Delete eventflag

In the RX78K0R, eventflags created statically by the [Kernel Initialization Module](#) cannot be deleted dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

5.3.3 Set eventflag

A bit pattern is set by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- `set_flg`, `iset_flg`

These service calls set the result of ORing the bit pattern of the eventflag specified by parameter *flgid* and the bit pattern specified by parameter *setptn* as the bit pattern of the target eventflag.

If the required condition of the task queued to the target eventflag wait queue is satisfied when this service call is issued, the relevant task is unlinked from the wait queue at the same time as bit pattern setting processing.

As a result, the relevant task is moved from the WAITING state (waiting state for an eventflag) to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the SUSPENDED state.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      flgid = ID_flgA;      /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    FLGPTN  setptn = 0B1010;      /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ..... */

    set_flg ( flgid, setptn );    /*Set eventflag*/

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note 1 If the task linked in the wait queue is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 If the bit pattern set to the target eventflag is B'1100 and the bit pattern specified by parameter *setptn* is B'1010 when this service call is issued, the bit pattern of the target eventflag is set to B'1110.

5.3.4 Clear eventflag

A bit pattern is cleared by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- **clr_flg**

This service call sets the result of ANDing the bit pattern set to the eventflag specified by parameter *flgid* and the bit pattern specified by parameter *clrptn* as the bit pattern of the target eventflag.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      flgid = ID_flgA;      /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    FLGPTN  clrptn = 0B1010;      /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ..... */

    clr_flg ( flgid, clrptn );    /*Clear eventflag*/

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note 1 This service call does not perform queuing of clear requests. If the bit pattern has been cleared, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

Note 2 If the bit pattern set to the target eventflag is B'1100 and the bit pattern specified by parameter *clrptn* is B'1010 when this service call is issued, the bit pattern of the target eventflag is set to B'1110.

Note 3 This service call does not cancel tasks in the waiting state for an eventflag.

5.3.5 Wait for eventflag

A bit pattern is checked (waiting forever, polling, or with timeout) by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- **wai_flg**

This service call checks whether the bit pattern specified by parameter *waiptn* and the bit pattern that satisfies the required condition specified by parameter *wfmode* are set to the eventflag specified by parameter *flgid*.

If a bit pattern that satisfies the required condition has been set for the target eventflag, the bit pattern of the target eventflag is stored in the area specified by parameter *p_flgptn*.

If the bit pattern of the target eventflag does not satisfy the required condition when this service call is issued, the invoking task is queued to the target eventflag wait queue.

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (waiting state for an eventflag).

The waiting state for an eventflag is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Waiting State for an Eventflag Cancel Operation	Return Value
A bit pattern that satisfies the required condition was set to the target eventflag as a result of issuing set_flg .	E_OK
A bit pattern that satisfies the required condition was set to the target eventflag as a result of issuing iset_flg .	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI

The following shows the specification format of required condition *wfmode*.

- *wfmode* = TWF_ANDW

Checks whether all of the bits to which 1 is set by parameter *waiptn* are set as the target eventflag.

- *wfmode* = TWF_ORW

Checks which bit, among bits to which 1 is set by parameter *waiptn*, is set as the target eventflag.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER        ercd;                /*Declares variable*/
    ID        flgid = ID_flgA;     /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    FLGPTN    waiptn = 0B1110;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    MODE      wfmode = TWF_ANDW;  /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    FLGPTN    p_flgptn;           /*Declares variable*/

    /* ..... */

                                /*Wait for eventflag (waiting forever)*/
    ercd = wai_flg ( flgid, waiptn, wfmode, &p_flgptn );

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Normal termination processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_RLWAI ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Forced termination processing*/
    }

    /* ..... */
}
```

}

- Note 1 In the RX78K0R, the number of tasks that can be queued to the eventflag wait queue is one. If this service call is issued for the eventflag to which a task is queued, therefore, "E_ILUSE" is returned regardless of whether or not the required condition is immediately satisfied.
- Note 2 The RX78K0R performs bit pattern clear processing (0x0 setting) when the required condition of the target eventflag (TA_CLR attribute) is satisfied.

- `pol_flg`

This service call checks whether the bit pattern specified by parameter *waiptn* and the bit pattern that satisfies the required condition specified by parameter *wfmode* are set to the eventflag specified by parameter *flgid*.

If the bit pattern that satisfies the required condition has been set to the target eventflag, the bit pattern of the target eventflag is stored in the area specified by parameter *p_flgptn*.

If the bit pattern of the target eventflag does not satisfy the required condition when this service call is issued, "E_TMOUT" is returned.

The following shows the specification format of required condition *wfmode*.

- *wfmode* = TWF_ANDW

Checks whether all of the bits to which 1 is set by parameter *waiptn* are set as the target eventflag.

- *wfmode* = TWF_ORW

Checks which bit, among bits to which 1 is set by parameter *waiptn*, is set as the target eventflag.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER        ercd;                /*Declares variable*/
    ID        flgid = ID_flgA;     /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    FLGPTN    waiptn = 0B11110;   /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    MODE      wfmode = TWF_ANDW;  /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    FLGPTN    p_flgptn;           /*Declares variable*/

    /* ..... */

                                /*Wait for eventflag (polling)*/
    ercd = pol_flg ( flgid, waiptn, wfmode, &p_flgptn );

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Polling success processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_TMOUT ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Polling failure processing*/
    }

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note 1 In the RX78K0R, the number of tasks that can be queued to the eventflag wait queue is one. If this service call is issued for the eventflag to which a task is queued, therefore, "E_ILUSE" is returned regardless of whether or not the required condition is immediately satisfied.

Note 2 The RX78K0R performs bit pattern clear processing (0x0 setting) when the required condition of the target eventflag (TA_CLR attribute) is satisfied.

- `twai_flg`

This service call checks whether the bit pattern specified by parameter *waiptn* and the bit pattern that satisfies the required condition specified by parameter *wfmode* are set to the eventflag specified by parameter *flgid*.

If the bit pattern that satisfies the required condition has been set to the target eventflag, the bit pattern of the target eventflag is stored in the area specified by parameter *p_flgptn*.

If the bit pattern of the target eventflag does not satisfy the required condition when this service call is issued, the invoking task is queued to the target eventflag wait queue.

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (waiting state for an eventflag).

The waiting state for an eventflag is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Waiting State for an Eventflag Cancel Operation	Return Value
A bit pattern that satisfies the required condition was set to the target eventflag as a result of issuing <code>set_flg</code> .	E_OK
A bit pattern that satisfies the required condition was set to the target eventflag as a result of issuing <code>iset_flg</code> .	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept <code>rel_wai</code> while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept <code>irel_wai</code> while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Polling failure or timeout.	E_TMOUT

The following shows the specification format of required condition *wfmode*.

- *wfmode* = TWF_ANDW

Checks whether all of the bits to which 1 is set by parameter *waiptn* are set as the target eventflag.

- *wfmode* = TWF_ORW

Checks which bit, among bits to which 1 is set by parameter *waiptn*, is set as the target eventflag.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;                  /*Declares variable*/
    ID      flgid = ID_flgA;       /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    FLGPTN  waiptn = 0B11110;     /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    MODE    wfmode = TWF_ANDW;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    FLGPTN  p_flgptn;             /*Declares variable*/
    TMO      tmout = 3600;        /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ..... */

                                /*Wait for eventflag (with timeout)*/
    ercd = twai_flg ( flgid, waiptn, wfmode, &p_flgptn, tmout );

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Normal termination processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_RLWAI ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Forced termination processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_TMOUT ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Timeout processing*/
    }

    /* ..... */
}
```

- Note 1 In the RX78K0R, the number of tasks that can be queued to the eventflag wait queue is one. If this service call is issued for the eventflag to which a task is queued, therefore, "E_ILUSE" is returned regardless of whether or not the required condition is immediately satisfied.
- Note 2 The RX78K0R performs bit pattern clear processing (0x0 setting) when the required condition of the target eventflag (TA_CLR attribute) is satisfied.
- Note 3 When TMO_FEVR is specified for wait time tmout, processing equivalent to [wai_flg](#) will be executed. When TMO_POL is specified, processing equivalent to [pol_flg](#) will be executed.

5.3.6 Reference eventflag state

An eventflag status is referenced by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- [ref_flg](#)

Stores eventflag state packet (such as existence of waiting tasks) of the eventflag specified by parameter *flgid* in the area specified by parameter *pk_rflg*.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      flgid = ID_flgA;      /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    T_RFLG   pk_rflg;             /*Declares data structure*/
    ID      wtskid;               /*Declares variable*/
    FLGPtn   flgpntn;             /*Declares variable*/

    /* ..... */

    ref\_flg ( flgid, &pk_rflg ); /*Reference eventflag state*/

    wtskid = pk_rflg.wtskid;      /*Reference ID number of the task at the head of
                                   the wait queue*/
    flgpntn = pk_rflg.flgpntn;   /*Reference current bit pattern*/

    /* ..... */
}
```

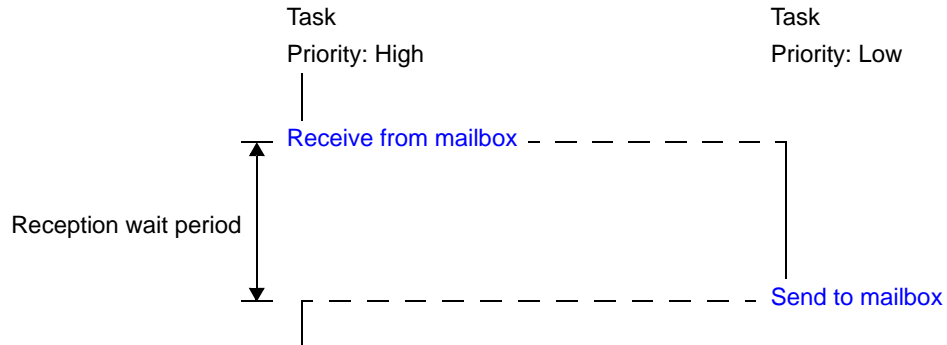
Note For details about the eventflag state packet, refer to "[12.5.3 Eventflag state packet](#)".

5.4 Mailboxes

The RX78K0R provides a mailbox, as a communication function between tasks, that hands over the execution result of a given processing program to another processing program.

The following shows a processing flow when using a mailbox.

Figure 5-3 Processing Flow (Mailbox)



5.4.1 Create mailbox

In the RX78K0R, the method of creating a mailbox is limited to "static creation by the [Kernel Initialization Module](#)".

Mailboxes therefore cannot be created dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

- Static create

Static mailbox creation is realized by defining [Mailbox information](#) in the system configuration file.

The RX78K0R executes mailbox creation processing based on data stored in information files, using the [Kernel Initialization Module](#), and handles the created mailboxes as management targets.

5.4.2 Delete mailbox

In the RX78K0R, mailboxes created statically by the [Kernel Initialization Module](#) cannot be deleted dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

5.4.3 Message

The information exchanged among processing programs via the mailbox is called "messages".

Messages can be transmitted to any processing program via the mailbox, but it should be noted that, in the case of the synchronization and communication functions of the RX78K0R, only the start address of the message is handed over to the receiving processing program, but the message contents are not copied to a separate area.

- Securement of memory area

In the case of the RX78K0R, it is recommended to use the memory area secured by issuing service calls such as [get_mpf](#) and [pget_mpf](#) for messages.

Note The RX78K0R uses the message start area as a link area during queuing to the wait queue for mailbox messages. Therefore, if the memory area for messages is secured from other than the memory area controlled by the RX78K0R, it must be secured from 4-byte aligned addresses.

- Basic form of messages

In the RX78K0R, the message contents and length are prescribed as follows, according to the attributes of the mailbox to be used.

- When using a mailbox with the TA_MFIFO attribute

The contents and length past the first 4 bytes of a message (system reserved area msgque) are not restricted in particular in the RX78K0R.

Therefore, the contents and length past the first 4 bytes are prescribed among the processing programs that exchange data using the mailbox with the TA_MFIFO attribute.

The following shows the basic form of coding TA_MFIFO attribute messages in C.

[Message packet for TA_MFIFO attribute]

```
typedef struct t_msg {
    struct t_msg __far *msgque;    /*Reserved for future use*/
} T_MSG;
```

- When using a mailbox with the TA_MPRI attribute

The contents and length past the first 5 bytes of a message (system reserved area msgque, priority level msgpri) are not restricted in particular in the RX78K0R.

Therefore, the contents and length past the first 5 bytes are prescribed among the processing programs that exchange data using the mailbox with the TA_MPRI attribute.

The following shows the basic form of coding TA_MPRI attribute messages in C.

[Message packet for TA_MPRI attribute]

```
typedef struct t_msg_pri {
    struct t_msg __far *msgque;    /*Reserved for future use*/
    PRI msgpri;                   /*Message priority*/
} T_MSG_PRI;
```

Note 1 In the RX78K0R, a message having a smaller priority number is given a higher priority.

Note 2 A value between 1 and 31 can be specified for message priority.

Note 3 For details about the message packet, refer to "[12.5.4 Message packet](#)".

5.4.4 Send to mailbox

A message is transmitted by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- [snd_mbx](#)

This service call transmits the message specified by parameter *pk_msg* to the mailbox specified by parameter *mbxid* (queues the message in the wait queue).

If a task is queued to the target mailbox wait queue when this service call is issued, the message is not queued but handed over to the relevant task (first task of the wait queue).

As a result, the relevant task is unlinked from the wait queue and is moved from the WAITING state (receiving waiting state for a mailbox) to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the SUSPENDED state.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      mpfid = ID_mpfA;      /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    VP      p_blk;                /*Declares variable*/
    char     *p;                  /*Declares variable*/
    ID      mbxid = ID_mbxA;      /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    T_MSG_PRI *pk_msg;            /*Declares data structure*/

    /* ..... */

    get_mpf ( mpfid, &p_blk );    /*Secures memory area (for message)*/

                                /*Initializes variable*/
    p = (char *)p_blk + sizeof (T_MSG_PRI);

    while ( expr ) {
        *p++ = ..... /*Creates message (contents)*/
    }

                                /*Initializes data structure*/
    (T_MSG_PRI *)p_blk->msgpri = 8;

                                /*Send to mailbox*/
    snd_mbx ( mbxid, (T_MSG_PRI *)p_blk );

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note 1 If the first task of the wait queue is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 Messages are queued to the target mailbox wait queue in the order defined by [Attribute \(queuing method\): mbxatr](#) during configuration (FIFO order or priority order).

Note 3 With the RX78K0R mailbox, only the start address of the message is handed over to the receiving processing program, but the message contents are not copied to a separate area. The message contents can therefore be rewritten even after this service call is issued.

Note 4 For details about the message packet, refer to "[12.5.4 Message packet](#)".

5.4.5 Receive from mailbox

A message is received (waiting forever, polling, or with timeout) by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- [rcv_mbx](#)

This service call receives a message from the mailbox specified by parameter *mbxid*, and stores its start address in the area specified by parameter *ppk_msg*.

If the message could not be received from the target mailbox (no messages were queued in the wait queue) when this service call is issued, message reception processing is not executed but the invoking task is queued to the target mailbox wait queue in the order of message reception request (FIFO order).

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (receiving waiting for a mailbox).

The receiving waiting for a mailbox is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Receiving Waiting for a Mailbox Cancel Operation	Return Value
A message was transmitted to the target mailbox as a result of issuing snd_mbx .	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;                /*Declares variable*/
    ID      mbxid = ID_mbxA;      /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    T_MSG    *ppk_msg;           /*Declares data structure*/

    /* ..... */

                                /*Receive from mailbox (waiting forever)*/
    ercd = rcv_mbx ( mbxid, &ppk_msg );

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Normal termination processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_RLWAI ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Forced termination processing*/
    }

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note For details about the message packet, refer to "[12.5.4 Message packet](#)".

- [prcv_mbx](#)

This service call receives a message from the mailbox specified by parameter *mbxid*, and stores its start address in the area specified by parameter *ppk_msg*.

If the message could not be received from the target mailbox (no messages were queued in the wait queue) when this service call is issued, message reception processing is not executed but "E_TMOUT" is returned.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER        ercd;               /*Declares variable*/
    ID        mbxid = ID_mbxA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    T_MSG     *ppk_msg;          /*Declares data structure*/

    /* ..... */

                                /*Receive from mailbox (polling)*/
    ercd = prcv_mbx ( mbxid, &ppk_msg );

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Polling success processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_TMOUT ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Polling failure processing*/
    }

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note For details about the message packet, refer to "[12.5.4 Message packet](#)".

- [trcv_mbx](#)

This service call receives a message from the mailbox specified by parameter *mbxid*, and stores its start address in the area specified by parameter *ppk_msg*.

If the message could not be received from the target mailbox (no messages were queued in the wait queue) when this service call is issued, message reception processing is not executed but the invoking task is queued to the target mailbox wait queue in the order of message reception request (FIFO order).

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (receiving waiting for a mailbox).

The receiving waiting for a mailbox is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Receiving Waiting for a Mailbox Cancel Operation	Return Value
A message was transmitted to the target mailbox as a result of issuing snd_mbx .	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Polling failure or timeout.	E_TMOUT

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;                /*Declares variable*/
    ID      mbxid = ID_mbxA;      /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    T_MSG    *ppk_msg;           /*Declares data structure*/
    TMO      tmout = 3600;        /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ..... */

                                /*Receive from mailbox (with timeout)*/
    ercd = trcv_mbx ( mbxid, &ppk_msg, tmout );

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Normal termination processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_RLWAI ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Forced termination processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_TMOUT ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Timeout processing*/
    }

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note 1 When TMO_FEVR is specified for wait time *tmout*, processing equivalent to [rcv_mbx](#) will be executed. When TMO_POL is specified, processing equivalent to [prcv_mbx](#) will be executed.

Note 2 For details about the message packet, refer to "[12.5.4 Message packet](#)".

5.4.6 Reference mailbox state

A mailbox status is referenced by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- [ref_mbx](#)

Stores mailbox state packet (such as existence of waiting tasks) of the mailbox specified by parameter *mbxid* in the area specified by parameter *pk_rmbx*.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID        mbxid = ID_mbxA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    T_RMBX    pk_rmbx;           /*Declares data structure*/
    ID        wtskid;            /*Declares variable*/
    T_MSG     *pk_msg;           /*Declares data structure*/

    /* ..... */

    ref_mbx ( mbxid, &pk_rmbx ); /*Reference mailbox state*/

    wtskid = pk_rmbx.wtskid;      /*Reference ID number of the task at the head of
                                   the wait queue*/
    pk_msg = pk_rmbx.pk_msg;      /*Referenc start address of the message packet at
                                   the head of the message queue*/

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note For details about the mailbox state packet, refer to "[12.5.5 Mailbox state packet](#)".

CHAPTER 6 MEMORY POOL MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS

This chapter describes the memory pool management functions performed by the RX78K0R.

6.1 Outline

The statically secured memory areas in the [Kernel Initialization Module](#) are subject to management by the memory pool management functions of the RX78K0R.

In the RX78K0R, the allocation destinations (segment names) of management objects modularized for each function are specified.

The following lists the segment names prescribed in the RX78K0R.

- rx78k0r segment
Area where the RX78K0R's core processing part and main processing part of service calls provided by the RX78K0R are to be allocated.
- rxinf segment
Area where information items such as the RX78K0R version are to be allocated.
- sit segment
Area where initial information items related to OS resources that do not change dynamically are allocated as system information tables.
- sysarea segment
Area where information items required to implement the functionalities provided by the RX78K0R and information items related to OS resources that change dynamically are allocated as management objects.
- stkarea segment
Area where the system stack and the task stack are to be allocated.
- p0area, p1area, p2area, p3area segment
Area where fixed-sized memory pools are to be allocated.

6.2 Fixed-Sized Memory Pool

When a dynamic memory manipulation request is issued from a processing program in the RX78K0R, the fixed-sized memory pool is provided as a usable memory area.

Dynamic memory manipulation of the fixed-sized memory pool is executed in fixed size memory block units.

6.2.1 Create fixed-sized memory pool

In the RX78K0R, the method of creating a fixed-sized memory pool is limited to "static creation by the [Kernel Initialization Module](#)".

Fixed-sized memory pools therefore cannot be created dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

- Static create
Static fixed-sized memory pool creation is realized by defining [Fixed-sized memory pool information](#) in the system configuration file.
The RX78K0R executes fixed-sized memory pool creation processing based on data stored in information files, using the [Kernel Initialization Module](#), and handles the created fixed-sized memory pools as management targets.

6.2.2 Delete fixed-sized memory pool

In the RX78K0R, fixed-sized memory pools created statically by the [Kernel Initialization Module](#) cannot be deleted dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

6.2.3 Acquire fixed-sized memory block

A memory block is acquired (waiting forever, polling, or with timeout) by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- [get_mpf](#)

This service call acquires the memory block from the fixed-sized memory pool specified by parameter *mpfid* and stores the start address in the area specified by parameter *p_blk*.

If a memory block could not be acquired from the target fixed-sized memory pool (no available memory blocks exist) when this service call is issued, memory block acquisition processing is not performed but the invoking task is queued to the target fixed-sized memory pool wait queue in the order of memory block acquisition request (FIFO order).

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (waiting state for a fixed-sized memory block).

The waiting state for a fixed-sized memory block is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Waiting State for a Fixed-sized Memory Block Cancel Operation	Return Value
A memory block was returned to the target fixed-sized memory pool as a result of issuing rel_mpf .	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;                /*Declares variable*/
    ID      mpfid = ID_mpfA;      /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    VP      p_blk;               /*Declares variable*/

    /* ..... */

                                /*Acquire fixed-sized memory block (wait
                                forever)*/
    ercd = get_mpf ( mpfid, &p_blk );

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Normal termination processing*/

                                /*Release fixed-sized memory block*/
        rel_mpf ( mpfid, p_blk );
    } else if ( ercd == E_RLWAI ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Forced termination processing*/
    }

    /* ..... */
}
```


- [pget_mpf](#)

This service call acquires the memory block from the fixed-sized memory pool specified by parameter *mpfid* and stores the start address in the area specified by parameter *p_blk*.

If a memory block could not be acquired from the target fixed-sized memory pool (no available memory blocks exist) when this service call is issued, memory block acquisition processing is not performed but "E_TMOUT" is returned. The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;                /*Declares variable*/
    ID      mpfid = ID_mpfA;      /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    VP      p_blk;               /*Declares variable*/

    /* ..... */

                                /*Acquire fixed-sized memory block (polling)*/
    ercd = pget_mpf ( mpfid, &p_blk );

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Polling success processing*/

                                /*Release fixed-sized memory block*/
        rel_mpf ( mpfid, p_blk );
    } else if ( ercd == E_TMOUT ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Polling failure processing*/
    }

    /* ..... */
}
```

- `tget_mpf`

This service call acquires the memory block from the fixed-sized memory pool specified by parameter *mpfid* and stores the start address in the area specified by parameter *p_blk*.

If a memory block could not be acquired from the target fixed-sized memory pool (no available memory blocks exist) when this service call is issued, memory block acquisition processing is not performed but the invoking task is queued to the target fixed-sized memory pool wait queue in the order of memory block acquisition request (FIFO order).

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (waiting state for a fixed-sized memory block).

The waiting state for a fixed-sized memory block is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Waiting State for a Fixed-sized memory Block Cancel Operation	Return Value
A memory block was returned to the target fixed-sized memory pool as a result of issuing <code>rel_mpf</code> .	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept <code>rel_wai</code> while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept <code>irel_wai</code> while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Polling failure or timeout.	E_TMOUT

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;                /*Declares variable*/
    ID      mpfid = ID_mpfA;      /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    VP      p_blk;               /*Declares variable*/
    TMO      tmout = 3600;        /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ..... */

                                /*Acquire fixed-sized memory block (with
                                timeout)*/
    ercd = tget_mpf ( mpfid, &p_blk, tmout );

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Normal termination processing*/

                                /*Release fixed-sized memory block*/
        rel_mpf ( mpfid, p_blk );
    } else if ( ercd == E_RLWAI ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Forced termination processing*/
    } else if ( ercd == E_TMOUT ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Timeout processing*/
    }

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note When TMO_FEVR is specified for wait time *tmout*, processing equivalent to `get_mpf` will be executed. When TMO_POL is specified, processing equivalent to `pget_mpf` will be executed.

6.2.4 Release fixed-sized memory block

A memory block is returned by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- `rel_mpf`

This service call returns the memory block specified by parameter *blk* to the fixed-sized memory pool specified by parameter *mpfid*.

If a task is queued to the target fixed-sized memory pool wait queue when this service call is issued, memory block return processing is not performed but memory blocks are returned to the relevant task (first task of wait queue).

As a result, the relevant task is unlinked from the wait queue and is moved from the WAITING state (waiting state for a fixed-sized memory block) to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the SUSPENDED state.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>           /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>        /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER      ercd;                  /*Declares variable*/
    ID      mpfid = ID_mpfA;       /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    VP      blk;                   /*Declares variable*/

    /* ..... */

                                /*Acquire fixed-sized memory block*/
    ercd = get_mpf ( mpfid, &blk );

    if ( ercd == E_OK ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Normal termination processing*/

                                /*Release fixed-sized memory block*/
        rel_mpf ( mpfid, blk );
    } else if ( ercd == E_RLWAI ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Forced termination processing*/
    }

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note 1 If the first task of the wait queue is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 The RX78K0R does not clear the memory blocks before returning them. The contents of the returned memory blocks are therefore undefined.

6.2.5 Reference fixed-sized memory pool state

A fixed-sized memory pool status is referenced by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- [ref_mpf](#)

Stores fixed-sized memory pool state packet (such as existence of waiting tasks) of the fixed-sized memory pool specified by parameter *mpfid* in the area specified by parameter *pk_rmpf*.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      mpfid = ID_mpfA;      /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    T_RMPF   pk_rmpf;             /*Declares data structure*/
    ID      wtskid;                /*Declares variable*/
    UINT     fblkcnt;             /*Declares variable*/

    /* ..... */

    ref_mpf ( mpfid, &pk_rmpf ); /*Reference fixed-sized memory pool state*/

    wtskid = pk_rmpf.wtskid;      /*Reference ID number of the task at the head of
                                   the wait queue*/
    fblkcnt = pk_rmpf.fblkcnt;    /*Reference number of free memory blocks*/

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note For details about the fixed-sized memory pool state packet, refer to "[12.5.6 Fixed-sized memory pool state packet](#)".

CHAPTER 7 TIME MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS

This chapter describes the time management functions performed by the RX78K0R.

7.1 Outline

The time management functions of the RX78K0R include [Delayed Wakeup](#), [Timeout](#), and [Cyclic Handlers](#) that use timer interrupts created as fixed intervals, as means for realizing time-dependent processing.

Note The RX78K0R does not execute initialization of hardware that creates timer interrupts (clock controller, etc.). This initialization processing must therefore be coded by the user in the [Boot Processing](#) or [Initialization Routine](#).

7.2 Timer Handler

The timer handler is a dedicated time control processing routine that consists of the processing required to realize delayed wakeup of tasks, timeout during the WAITING state, and cyclic handler activation, and is called from the interrupt handler that is activated upon output of a timer interrupt.

Note The timer handler is part of the functions provided by the RX78K0R. The user therefore need not code the processing contents of the timer handler.

7.2.1 Define timer handler

Timer handler registration is realized by coding the timer handler (function name: `Timer_Handler`) call processing in the interrupt handler to be activated upon occurrence of a timer interrupt.

A timer handler call example is described below.

```
#pragma rtos_interrupt  INTTM00 func_inthdr

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_inthdr ( void )
{
    Timer_Handler ();           /*Call timer handler*/

    return;                     /*Terminate timer handler*/
}
```

7.3 Delayed Wakeup

Delayed wakeup the operation that makes the invoking task transit from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state during the interval until a given length of time has elapsed, and makes that task move from the WAITING state to the READY state once the given length of time has elapsed.

Delayed wakeup is implemented by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

Table 7-1 Delayed Wakeup

Service Call	Function
dly_tsk	Delay task.

7.4 Timeout

Timeout is the operation that makes the target task move from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state during the interval until a given length of time has elapsed if the required condition issued from a task is not immediately satisfied, and makes that task move from the WAITING state to the READY state regardless of whether the required condition is satisfied once the given length of time has elapsed.

A timeout is implemented by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

Table 7-2 Timeout

Service Call	Function
tslp_tsk	Put task to sleep.
twai_sem	Acquire semaphore resource.
twai_flg	Wait for eventflag.
trcv_mbx	Receive from mailbox.
tget_mpf	Acquire fixed-sized memory block.

7.5 Cyclic Handlers

The cyclic handler is a routine dedicated to cycle processing that is activated periodically at a constant interval (activation cycle), and is called from the [Timer Handler](#).

The RX78K0R handles the cyclic handler as a "non-task (module independent from tasks)". Therefore, even if a task with the highest priority in the system is being executed, the processing is suspended when a specified activation cycle has come, and the control is passed to the cyclic handler.

7.5.1 Create cyclic handler

In the RX78K0R, the method of creating a cyclic handler is limited to "static creation by the [Kernel Initialization Module](#)".

Cyclic handlers therefore cannot be created dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

- Static create

Static cyclic handler creation is realized by defining [Cyclic handler information](#) in the system configuration file.

The RX78K0R executes cyclic handler creation processing based on data stored in information files, using the [Kernel Initialization Module](#), and handles the created cyclic handlers as management targets.

7.5.2 Delete cyclic handler

In the RX78K0R, cyclic handlers created statically by the [Kernel Initialization Module](#) cannot be deleted dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

7.5.3 Basic form of cyclic handlers

Write cyclic handlers using void type functions that do not have arguments (function: any).

The following shows the basic form of cyclic handlers.

[C Language]

```
#include    <kernel.h>           /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>        /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_cychdr ( void )
{
    /* ..... */                /*Main processing*/

    return;                      /*Terminate cyclic handler*/
}
```

[Assembly Language]

```
$INCLUDE    (kernel.inc)         ;Standard header file definition
$INCLUDE    (kernel_id.inc)      ;System information header file definition

        PUBLIC  _func_cychdr
        CSEG
_func_cychdr:
    ; .....                      ;Main Processing

        RET                      ;Terminate cyclic handler
        END
```

7.5.4 Internal processing of cyclic handler

The RX78K0R handles the cyclic handler as a "non-task".

Moreover, the RX78K0R executes "original pre-processing" when passing control to the cyclic handler, as well as "original post-processing" when regaining control from the cyclic handler.

Therefore, note the following points when coding cyclic handlers.

- Coding method

Code cyclic handlers using C or assembly language in the format shown in ["7.5.3 Basic form of cyclic handlers"](#).

- Stack switching

The RX78K0R executes processing to switch to the system stack when passing control to the cyclic handler, and processing to switch to the stack for the switch destination processing program (system stack or task stack) when regaining control from the cyclic handler.

The user is therefore not required to code processing related to stack switching in cyclic handlers.

- Interrupt status

Maskable interrupt acknowledgement is prohibited in the RX78K0R when control is passed to the cyclic handler.

To change (enable) the interrupt status in the cyclic handler, writing of `#pragma EI` directive and calling of the EI function are therefore required.

- Service call issuance

The RX78K0R handles the cyclic handler as a "non-task".

Service calls that can be issued in cyclic handlers are limited to the service calls that can be issued from non-tasks.

Note 1 For details on the valid issuance range of each service call, refer to [Table 12-8](#) to [Table 12-16](#).

Note 2 If a service call (`ichg_pri`, `isig_sem`, etc.) accompanying dispatch processing (task scheduling processing) is issued in order to quickly complete the processing in the cyclic handler during the interval until the processing in the cyclic handler ends, the RX78K0R executes only processing such as queue manipulation, counter manipulation, etc., and the actual dispatch processing is delayed until a return instruction is issued by the cyclic handler, upon which the actual dispatch processing is performed in batch.

7.5.5 Start cyclic handler operation

Moving to the operational state (STA state) is implemented by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- `sta_cyc`

This service call moves the cyclic handler specified by parameter *cycid* from the non-operational state (STP state) to operational state (STA state).

As a result, the target cyclic handler is handled as an activation target of the RX78K0R.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID        cycid = ID_cycA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/

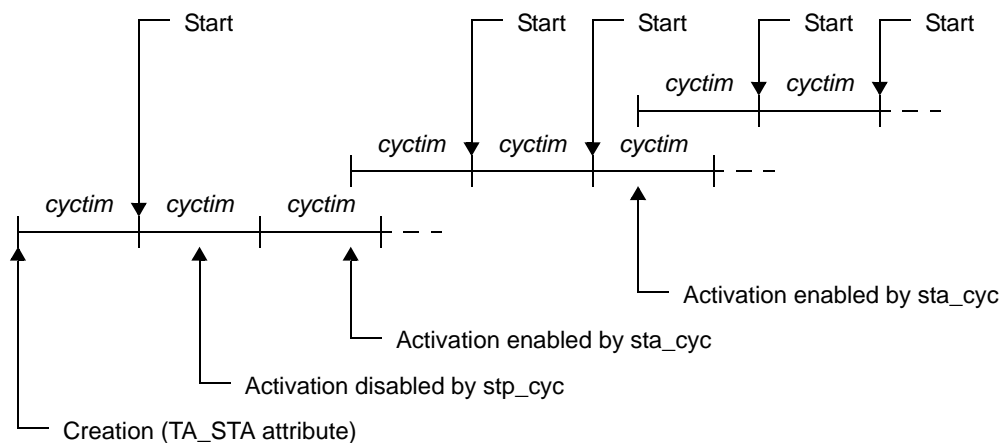
    /* ..... */

    sta_cyc ( cycid );            /*Start cyclic handler operation*/

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note This service call does not perform queuing of start requests. If the target cyclic handler has been moved to the operational state (STA state), only activation cycle re-set processing is executed. The relative time interval from the output of this service call until the first activation request is output is always the activation phase (activation cycle *cyctim*) using the output of this service call as the reference point.

[Cyclic handler activation image]



7.5.6 Stop cyclic handler operation

Moving to the non-operational state (STP state) is implemented by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- [stp_cyc](#)

This service call moves the cyclic handler specified by parameter *cycid* from the operational state (STA state) to non-operational state (STP state).

As a result, the target cyclic handler is excluded from activation targets of the RX78K0R until issuance of [sta_cyc](#).

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID        cycid = ID_cycA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ..... */

    stp_cyc ( cycid );            /*Stop cyclic handler operation*/

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note This service call does not perform queuing of stop requests. If the target cyclic handler has been moved to the non-operational state (STP state), therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

7.5.7 Reference cyclic handler state

A cyclic handler status by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- [ref_cyc](#)

Stores cyclic handler state packet (such as current status) of the cyclic handler specified by parameter *cycid* in the area specified by parameter *pk_rcyc*.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID      cycid = ID_cycA;      /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    T_RCYC  pk_rcyc;              /*Declares data structure*/
    STAT    cycstat;              /*Declares variable*/
    RELTIM  lefttim;              /*Declares variable*/

    /* ..... */

    ref_cyc ( cycid, &pk_rcyc ); /*Reference cyclic handler state*/

    cycstat = pk_rcyc.cycstat;    /*Reference cyclic handler operational state*/
    lefttim = pk_rcyc.lefttim;    /*Reference time left before the next activation*/

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note For details about the cyclic handler state packet, refer to "[12.5.7 Cyclic handler state packet](#)".

CHAPTER 8 SYSTEM STATE MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS

This chapter describes the system state management functions performed by the RX78K0R.

8.1 Outline

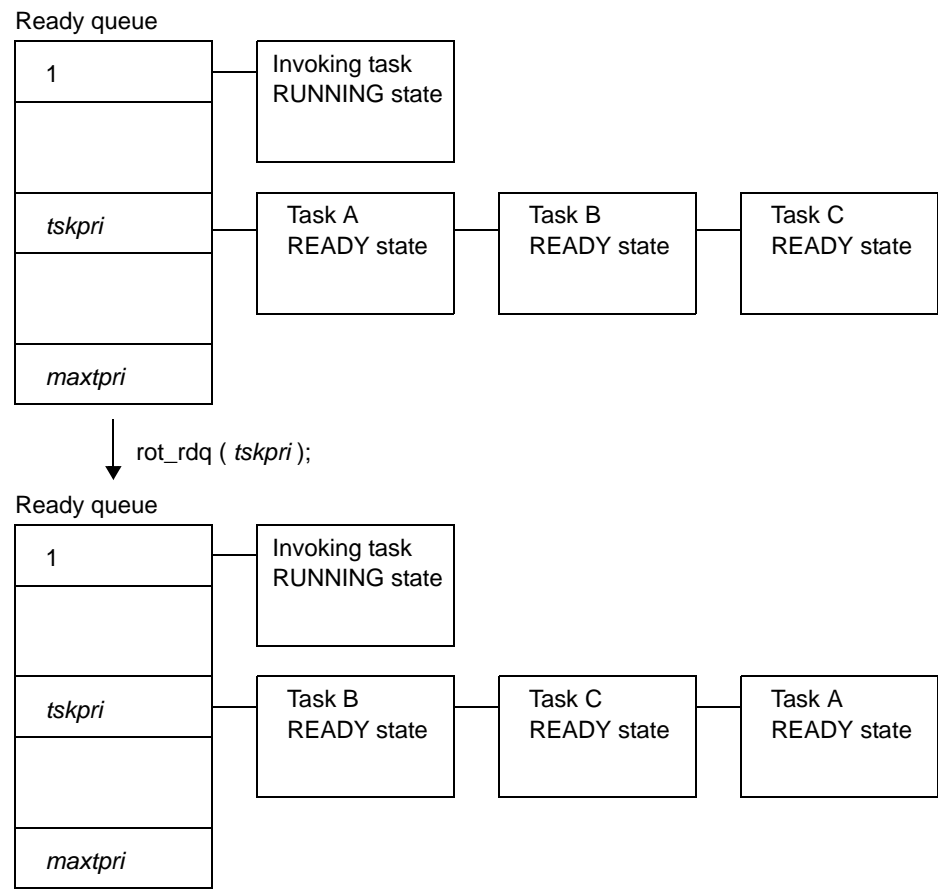
The system state control functions of the RX78K0R include, in addition to functions to manipulate the state of the system, such as transition to the CPU locked state and transition to the dispatching disabled state, functions for referencing the state of the system, such as context type referencing and CPU locked state referencing.

8.2 Rotate Task Precedence

A ready queue is rotated by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- `rot_rdq, irot_rdq`
This service call re-queues the first task of the ready queue corresponding to the priority specified by parameter *tskpri* to the end of the queue to change the task execution order explicitly.
The following shows the status transition when this service call is used.

Figure 8-1 Rotate Task Precedence



The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#include    <kernel.h>           /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>        /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_cychdr ( void )
{
    PRI      tskpri = 8;          /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ..... */

    irot_rdq ( tskpri );          /*Rotate task precedence*/

    /* ..... */

    return;                       /*Terminate cyclic handler*/
}
```

- Note 1 This service call does not perform queuing of rotation requests. If no task is queued to the ready queue corresponding to the relevant priority, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.
- Note 2 Round-robin scheduling can be implemented by issuing this service call via a cyclic handler in a constant cycle.
- Note 3 The ready queue is a hash table that uses priority as the key, and tasks that have entered an executable state (READY state or RUNNING state) are queued in FIFO order.
Therefore, the scheduler realizes the RX78K0R's [Scheduling System](#) by executing task detection processing from the highest priority level of the ready queue upon activation, and upon detection of queued tasks, giving the CPU use right to the first task of the proper priority level.

8.3 Reference Task ID in the RUNNING State

A RUNNING-state task is referenced by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- [get_tid](#), [iget_tid](#)

These service calls store the ID of a task in the RUNNING state in the area specified by parameter *p_tskid*. The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#include    <kernel.h>           /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>        /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_cychdr ( void )
{
    ID      p_tskid;              /*Declares variable*/

    /* ..... */

    iget\_tid ( &p_tskid );         /*Reference task ID in the RUNNING state*/

    /* ..... */

    return;                       /*Terminate cyclic handler*/
}
```

Note This service call stores TSK_NONE in the area specified by parameter *p_tskid* if no tasks that have entered the RUNNING state exist (all tasks in the IDLE state).

8.4 Lock the CPU

A task is moved to the CPU locked state by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- `loc_cpu`, `iloc_cpu`

These service calls change the system status type to the CPU locked state.

As a result, maskable interrupt acknowledgment processing is prohibited during the interval from this service call is issued until `unl_cpu` or `iunl_cpu` is issued, and service call issuance is also restricted.

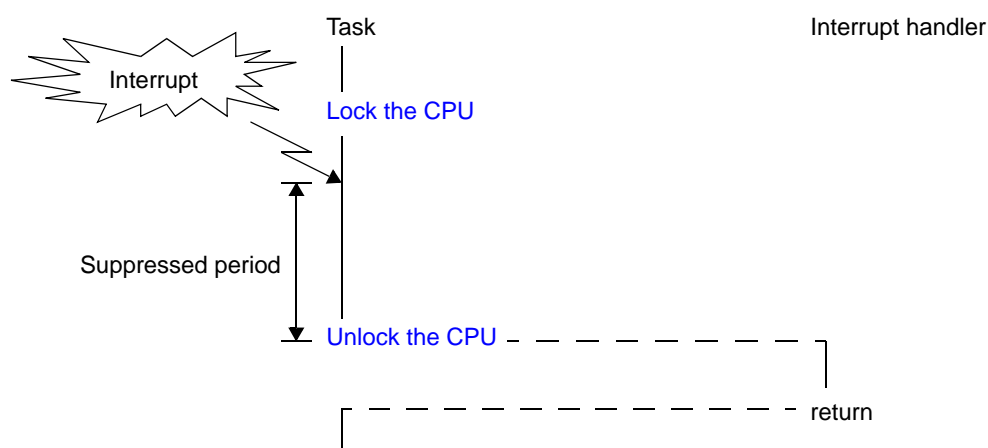
If a maskable interrupt is created during this period, the RX78K0R delays transition to the relevant interrupt processing (interrupt handler) until either `unl_cpu` or `iunl_cpu` is issued.

The service calls that can be issued in the CPU locked state are limited to the one listed below.

Service Call	Function
<code>loc_cpu</code> , <code>iloc_cpu</code>	Lock the CPU.
<code>unl_cpu</code> , <code>iunl_cpu</code>	Unlock the CPU.
<code>sns_ctx</code>	Reference contexts.
<code>sns_loc</code>	Reference CPU state.
<code>sns_dsp</code>	Reference dispatching state.
<code>sns_dpn</code>	Reference dispatch pending state.

The following shows a processing flow when using this service call.

Figure 8-2 Lock the CPU



The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    /* ..... */

    loc_cpu ( );                  /*Lock the CPU*/

    /* ..... */                  /*CPU locked state*/

    unl_cpu ( );                  /*Unlock the CPU*/

    /* ..... */
}
```

- Note 1 The CPU locked state changed by issuing this service call must be cancelled before the processing program that issued this service call ends.
- Note 2 This service call does not perform queuing of lock requests. If the system is in the CPU locked state, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.
- Note 3 The RX78K0R implements disabling of maskable interrupt acknowledgment by manipulating the interrupt mask flag register (MKxx) and the in-service priority flag (ISP_x) of the program status word (PSW). Therefore, manipulating of these registers from the processing program is prohibited from when this service call is issued until `unl_cpu` or `iunl_cpu` is issued.

8.5 Unlock the CPU

The CPU locked state is cancelled by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- `unl_cpu`, `iunl_cpu`

These service calls change the system status to the CPU unlocked state.

As a result, acknowledge processing of maskable interrupts prohibited through issuance of either `loc_cpu` or `iloc_cpu` is enabled, and the restriction on service call issuance is released.

If a maskable interrupt is created during the interval from when either `loc_cpu` or `iloc_cpu` is issued until this service call is issued, the RX78K0R delays transition to the relevant interrupt processing (interrupt handler) until this service call is issued.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    /* ..... */

    loc_cpu ( );                  /*Lock the CPU*/

    /* ..... */                  /*CPU locked state*/

    unl_cpu ( );                  /*Unlock the CPU*/

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note 1 This service call does not perform queuing of cancellation requests. If the system is in the CPU unlocked state, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

Note 2 The RX78K0R implements enabling of maskable interrupt acknowledgment by manipulating the interrupt mask flag register (MKxx) and the in-service priority flag (ISPx) of the program status word (PSW). Therefore, manipulating of these registers from the processing program is prohibited from when `loc_cpu` or `iloc_cpu` is issued until this service call is issued.

8.6 Disable Dispatching

A task is moved to the dispatching disabled state by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- `dis_dsp`

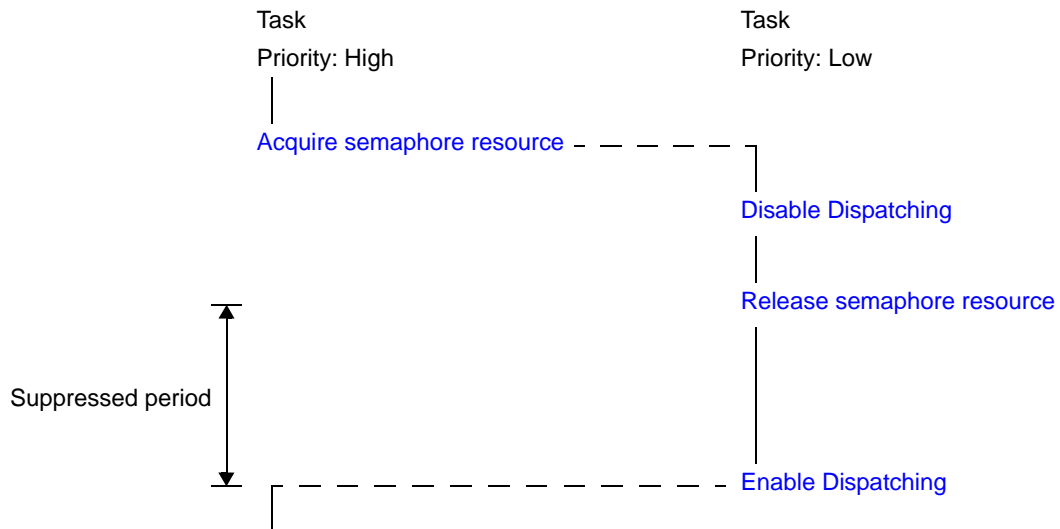
This service call changes the system status to the dispatching disabled state.

As a result, dispatch processing (task scheduling) is disabled from when this service call is issued until `ena_dsp` is issued.

If a service call (`chg_pri`, `sig_sem`, etc.) accompanying dispatch processing is issued during the interval from when this service call is issued until `ena_dsp` is issued, the RX78K0R executes only processing such as queue manipulation, counter manipulation, etc., and the actual dispatch processing is delayed until `ena_dsp` is issued, upon which the actual dispatch processing is performed in batch.

The following shows a processing flow when using this service call.

Figure 8-3 Disable Dispatching



The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```

#pragma      rtos_task  func_task

#include      <kernel.h>      /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>    /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    /* ..... */

    dis_dsp ( );                /*Disable dispatching*/

    /* ..... */                /*Dispatching disabled state*/

    ena_dsp ( );                /*Enable dispatching*/

    /* ..... */
}
  
```

Note 1 This service call does not perform queuing of disable requests. If the system is in the dispatching disabled state, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

Note 2 The dispatching disabled state changed by issuing this service call must be cancelled before the task that issued this service call moves to the DORMANT state.

8.7 Enable Dispatching

The dispatching disabled state is cancelled by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- `ena_dsp`

This service call changes the system status to the dispatching enabled state.

As a result, dispatch processing (task scheduling) that has been disabled by issuing `dis_dsp` is enabled.

If a service call (`chg_pri`, `sig_sem`, etc.) accompanying dispatch processing is issued during the interval from when `dis_dsp` is issued until this service call is issued, the RX78K0R executes only processing such as queue manipulation, counter manipulation, etc., and the actual dispatch processing is delayed until this service call is issued, upon which the actual dispatch processing is performed in batch.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    /* ..... */

    dis_dsp ( );                  /*Disable dispatching*/

    /* ..... */                  /*Dispatching disabled state*/

    ena_dsp ( );                  /*Enable dispatching*/

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note This service call does not perform queuing of enable requests. If the system is in the dispatching enabled state, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

8.8 Reference Contexts

The context type is referenced by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- sns_ctx

This service call acquires the context type of the processing program that issued this service call (non-task context or task context).

When this service call is terminated normally, the acquired context type (TRUE: non-task context, FALSE: task context) is returned.

Non-task contexts:	cyclic handler, interrupt handler
task contexts:	task

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#include    <kernel.h>           /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>        /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_sub ( void )
{
    BOOL    ercd;                /*Declares variable*/

    /* ..... */

    ercd = sns_ctx ( );          /*Reference contexts*/

    if ( ercd == TRUE ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Non-task contexts*/
    } else if ( ercd == FALSE ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Task contexts*/
    }

    /* ..... */
}
```

8.9 Reference CPU State

The CPU locked state is referenced by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- [sns_loc](#)

This service call acquires the system status type when this service call is issued (CPU locked state or CPU unlocked state).

When this service call is terminated normally, the acquired system state type (TRUE: CPU locked state, FALSE: CPU unlocked state) is returned.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#include    <kernel.h>           /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>        /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_sub ( void )
{
    BOOL    ercd;                /*Declares variable*/

    /* ..... */

    ercd = sns_loc ( );          /*Reference CPU state*/

    if ( ercd == TRUE ) {
        /* ..... */           /*CPU locked state*/
    } else if ( ercd == FALSE ) {
        /* ..... */           /*CPU unlocked state*/
    }

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note The system enters the CPU locked state when [loc_cpu](#) or [iloc_cpu](#) is issued, and enters the CPU unlocked state when [unl_cpu](#) or [iunl_cpu](#) is issued.

8.10 Reference Dispatching State

The dispatching state is referenced by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- [sns_dsp](#)

This service call acquires the system status type when this service call is issued (dispatching disabled state or dispatching enabled state).

When this service call is terminated normally, the acquired system state type (TRUE: dispatching disabled state, FALSE: dispatching enabled state) is returned.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#include    <kernel.h>           /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>        /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_sub ( void )
{
    BOOL    ercd;                /*Declares variable*/

    /* ..... */

    ercd = sns_dsp ( );          /*Reference dispatching state*/

    if ( ercd == TRUE ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Dispatching disabled state*/
    } else if ( ercd == FALSE ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Dispatching enabled state*/
    }

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note The system enters the dispatching disabled state when [dis_dsp](#) is issued, and enters the dispatching enabled state when [ena_dsp](#) is issued.

8.11 Reference Dispatch Pending State

The dispatch pending state is referenced by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- [sns_dpn](#)

This service call acquires the system status type when this service call is issued (whether in dispatch pending state or not).

When this service call is terminated normally, the acquired system state type (TRUE: dispatch pending state, FALSE: dispatch not-pending state) is returned.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#include    <kernel.h>           /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>        /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_sub ( void )
{
    BOOL    ercd;                /*Declares variable*/

    /* ..... */

    ercd = sns_dpn ( );          /*Reference dispatch pending state*/

    if ( ercd == TRUE ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Dispatch pending state*/
    } else if ( ercd == FALSE ) {
        /* ..... */           /*Other state*/
    }

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note The dispatch pending state designates the state in which explicit execution of dispatch processing (task scheduling processing) is prohibited by issuing either the [dis_dsp](#), [loc_cpu](#), or [iloc_cpu](#) service call, as well as the state during which processing of a non-task is being executed.

CHAPTER 9 INTERRUPT MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS

This chapter describes the interrupt management functions performed by the RX78K0R.

9.1 Outline

The RX78K0R provides as interrupt management functions related to the interrupt handlers activated when a maskable interrupt is occurred.

In the RX78K0R, interrupt servicing managed by the RX78K0R is called "interrupt handler", which is distinguished from interrupt servicing that operates without being managed by the RX78K0R.

The following lists the differences between interrupt handlers and interrupt servicing.

Table 9-1 Differences Between Interrupt Handlers and Interrupt Servicing

	Interrupt Handler	Interrupt Servicing
Service call issuance	Available	Not available
Interrupt type	Maskable interrupt	Maskable interrupt Software interrupt Reset interrupt
Interrupt priority level	Levels 2, 3	Levels 0, 1 (*)

* It is also possible to assign a level of 2 or 3 to an application that disables multiple interrupts.

Note 1 The interrupt priority level is set using the priority specification flag register of the target CPU.

Note 2 The RX78K0R does not execute initialization of hardware that creates interrupts (clock controller, etc.). This initialization processing must therefore be coded by the user in the [Boot Processing](#) or [Initialization Routine](#).

9.2 Interrupt Entry Processing

Interrupt entry processing is a routine dedicated to entry processing that is extracted as a user-own coding module to assign instructions to branch to relevant processing (such as [Interrupt Handlers](#) or [Boot Processing](#)), to the vector table address to which the CPU forcibly passes the control when an interrupt occurs.

Note For interrupt handlers written using the `#pragma rtos_interrupt` directive, the user is not required to write the relevant interrupt entry processing because the C compiler automatically outputs the interrupt entry processing corresponding to the interrupt request name.

9.2.1 Basic form of interrupt entry processing

The code of interrupt entry processing varies depending on whether the relevant processing ([Interrupt Handlers](#), [Boot Processing](#), or the like) is allocated to the near area or to the far area.

The following shows examples for coding interrupt entry processing.

[When the relevant processing ([Interrupt Handlers](#), [Boot Processing](#), or the like) is allocated to the near area]

<i>RESET</i>	CSEG	AT	0000h	;Vector table address setting
DW		<i>_boot</i>		;Jump to boot processing
<i>INTTM00</i>	CSEG	AT	002ch	;Vector table address setting
DW		<i>_func_inthdr</i>		;Jump to interrupt handler

[When the relevant processing ([Interrupt Handlers](#), [Boot Processing](#), or the like) is allocated to the far area]

EXTRN	<i>intent_RESET</i>			;Declares symbol external reference
EXTRN	<i>intent_INTM00</i>			;Declares symbol external reference
<i>RESET</i>	CSEG	AT	0000h	;Vector table address setting
DW		<i>intent_RESET</i>		
<i>INTTM00</i>	CSEG	AT	002ch	;Vector table address setting
DW		<i>intent_INTM00</i>		
<i>intent</i>	CSEG	UNITP		
<i>intent_RESET:</i>				
BR		<i>!!_boot</i>		;Jump to boot processing
<i>intent_INTM00:</i>				
BR		<i>!!_func_inthdr</i>		;Jump to interrupt handler

9.2.2 Internal processing of interrupt entry processing

Interrupt entry processing is a routine dedicated to processing of entries called without using the RX78K0R when an interrupt occurs. Therefore, note the following points when coding interrupt entry processing.

- Coding method
Code interrupt entry processing in assembly language, in formats compliant with the RA78K0R function call rules.
- Stack switching
No stack requiring switching exists in interrupt entry processing execution. The code regarding stack switching during interrupt entry processing is therefore not required.
- Service call issuance
The RX78K0R prohibits issuance of service calls in interrupt entry processing.

The following lists processing that should be executed in interrupt entry processing.

- Vector table address setting
- Passing of control to relevant processing ([Interrupt Handlers](#), [Boot Processing](#), or the like)

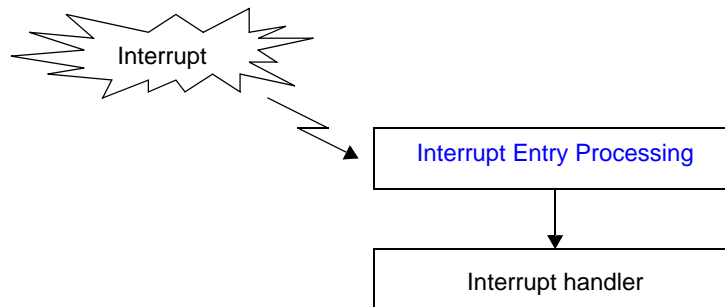
9.3 Interrupt Handlers

The interrupt handler is a routine dedicated to interrupt servicing that is activated when an interrupt occurs, and is called from [Interrupt Entry Processing](#).

The RX78K0R handles the interrupt handler as a "non-task (module independent from tasks)". Therefore, even if a task with the highest priority in the system is being executed, the processing is suspended when an interrupt occurs, and the control is passed to the interrupt handler.

The following shows a processing flow from when an interrupt occurs until the control is passed to the interrupt handler.

Figure 9-1 Processing Flow (Interrupt Handler)



9.3.1 Define interrupt handler

Interrupt handler registration is realized by coding [Interrupt Entry Processing](#) (branch instruction to interrupt handler) to the vector table address to which the CPU forcibly passes control upon occurrence of an interrupt.

The code of [Interrupt Entry Processing](#) varies depending on whether the interrupt handler is allocated to the near area or to the far area.

Note 1 For the coding method of interrupt entry processing, refer to "9.2 [Interrupt Entry Processing](#)".

Note 2 For interrupt handlers written using the `#pragma rtos_interrupt` directive, the user is not required to write the relevant interrupt entry processing because the C compiler automatically outputs the interrupt entry processing corresponding to the interrupt request name.

9.3.2 Basic form of interrupt handlers

When coding interrupt handlers in C, use void type functions that do not have arguments (any function name is fine) using the `#pragma rtos_interrupt` directive or `__rtos_interrupt` qualifier.

The following shows the basic form of coding interrupt handlers in C.

[When using `#pragma rtos_interrupt` directive]

```
#pragma rtos_interrupt  INTTM00 func_inthdr

#include    <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_inthdr ( void )
{
    /* ..... */               /*Main processing*/

    return;                     /*Terminate interrupt handler*/
}
```

[When using `__rtos_interrupt` qualifier]

```
__rtos_interrupt
void
func_inthdr ( void )
{
    /* ..... */               /*Main processing*/

    return;                     /*Terminate interrupt handler*/
}
```

Note Interrupt handlers coded by using the `#pragma rtos_interrupt` directive or `__rtos_interrupt` qualifier can be allocated to the near area only.

When coding interrupt handlers in assembly language, use void type functions that do not have arguments (function: any). Save registers and saddr areas at the beginning of the interrupt handler, call processing to switch to the system stack (function name: `_kernel_int_entry`), and then call end processing at the end of the interrupt handler (function name: `ret_int`).

[Assembly Language]

```

$INCLUDE    (kernel.inc)           ;Standard header file definition
$INCLUDE    (kernel_id.inc)        ;System information header file definition

PUBLIC      _func_inthdr
EXTRN       _@RTARG0
EXTRN       _@RTARG2
EXTRN       _@RTARG4
EXTRN       _@RTARG6
EXTRN       _@SEGAX
EXTRN       _@SEGDE
CSEG
_func_inthdr:
CALL        !!_kernel_int_entry    ;Switches to system stack, Saves registers

MOVW        AX, _@RTARG0            ;Saves saddr area
PUSH        AX
MOVW        AX, _@RTARG2
PUSH        AX
MOVW        AX, _@RTARG4
PUSH        AX
MOVW        AX, _@RTARG6
PUSH        AX
MOVW        AX, _@SEGAX
PUSH        AX
MOVW        AX, _@SEGDE
PUSH        AX

; .....                          ;Main processing

POP         AX                      ;Restores saddr area
MOVW        _@SEGDE, AX
POP         AX
MOVW        _@SEGAX, AX
POP         AX
MOVW        _@RTARG6, AX
POP         AX
MOVW        _@RTARG4, AX
POP         AX
MOVW        _@RTARG2, AX
POP         AX
MOVW        _@RTARG0, AX

BR          !!_ret_int              ;Terminate interrupt handler, Restores registers
END

```

9.3.3 Internal processing of interrupt handler

The RX78K0R handles the interrupt handler as a "non-task".

Moreover, the RX78K0R executes "original pre-processing" when passing control to the interrupt handler, as well as "original post-processing" when regaining control from the interrupt handler.

Therefore, note the following points when coding interrupt handlers.

- Coding method

Code interrupt handlers using C or assembly language in the format shown in ["9.3.2 Basic form of interrupt handlers"](#).

- Stack switching

For interrupt handlers written using the `#pragma rtos_interrupt` directive or `__rtos_interrupt` qualifier, the user is not required to write the relevant stack switch processing because the C compiler automatically outputs the calls for system stack switch processing (function name: `_kernel_int_entry`).

When coding interrupt handlers in assembly language, save registers and `saddr` areas at the beginning of the interrupt handler, call processing to switch to the system stack (function name: `_kernel_int_entry`), and then call end processing at the end of the interrupt handler (function name: `ret_int`), explicitly.

- Saving/storing of data in register and `saddr` areas

When executing an interrupt handler written with the `#pragma rtos_interrupt` directive or `__rtos_interrupt` qualifier, the user does not need to write save/store processing for it because the C compiler automatically outputs "`_kernel_int_entry, ret_int`". When executing an interrupt handler written in the assembly language, data of general-purpose registers (AX, BC, DE, HL) and registers ES CS is saved and restored in that function execution, by explicitly calling register data save processing (function name: `_kernel_int_entry`) at the beginning of the interrupt handler, and calling data restore processing (function name: `ret_int`) at the end of the interrupt handler.

Saving and restoring of data in the `saadr` area (`_@RTARGxx`, `_@SEGAX`, or `_@SEGDE`) must be written explicitly before and after main processing of interrupt handlers.

Note 1 Data of the PSW and PC are automatically saved and stored by the CPU.

Note 2 Saving and restoring of data in the `saddr` area is unnecessary if functions written in C are not called or service calls are not issued in the interrupt handler.

- Interrupt status

The RX78K0R goes into the following state when passing control to an interrupt handler.

Consequently, after control has passed to an interrupt handler, if an interrupt occurs with a higher precedence than the current level, then multiple interrupts can be processed.

- Acceptance of maskable interrupts is permitted

IE = 0

- Interrupts with the precedence below are disabled

A level-2 interrupt handler process is ongoing: ISP1 = 0, ISP0 = 1

A level-3 interrupt handler process is ongoing: ISP1 = 1, ISP0 = 0

Note It is not possible to define level 0 or 1 as an interrupt handler.

Note Even if the acceptance of maskable interrupts is disabled inside an interrupt handler (IE = 0), it will be enabled (IE = 1) after control returns from the interrupt handler.

- Service call issuance

The RX78K0R handles the interrupt handler as a "non-task".

Service calls that can be issued in interrupt handlers are limited to the service calls that can be issued from non-tasks.

Note 1 For details on the valid issuance range of each service call, refer to [Table 12-8](#) to [Table 12-16](#).

Note 2 If a service call (`ichg_pri`, `isig_sem`, etc.) accompanying dispatch processing (task scheduling processing) is issued in order to quickly complete the processing in the interrupt handler during the interval until the processing in the interrupt handler ends, the RX78K0R executes only processing such as queue manipulation, counter manipulation, etc., and the actual dispatch processing is delayed until a return instruction is issued by the interrupt handler, upon which the actual dispatch processing is performed in batch.

9.4 Controlling Enabling/Disabling of Interrupts

9.4.1 Interrupt level under management of the RX78K0R

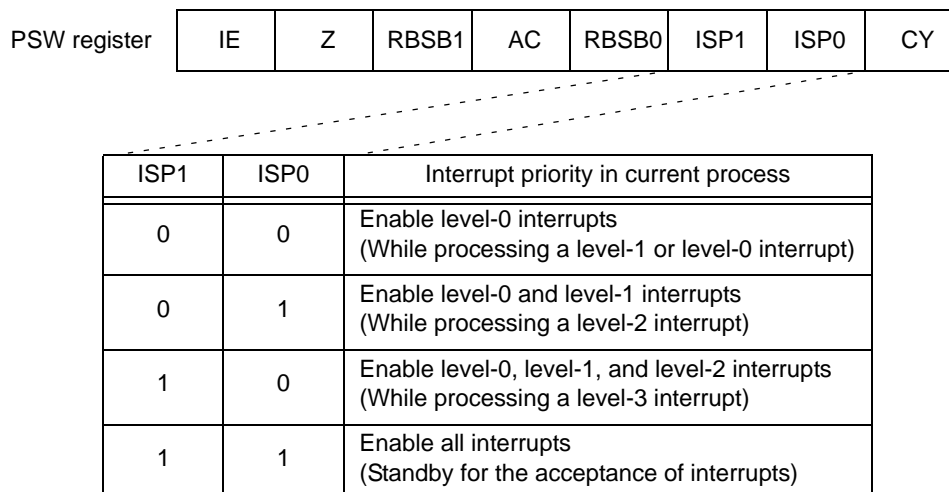
The 78K0R microcontroller manages four levels of interrupts: level 0 to level 3. On the RX78K0R, the interrupt levels at which service calls can be issued from an interrupt are permanently set to levels 2 and 3, these are treated as the interrupt levels managed by the RX78K0R.

- Interrupt levels 2 and 3 are managed by the RX78K0R.
Service calls can be issued from levels 2 and 3. Interrupt handlers, which are interrupts (including timer interrupts) managed by RX78K0R, must be set to level 2 or 3.
- Interrupt levels 0 and 1 are not managed by the RX78K0R
Service calls cannot be issued from levels 0 or 1. Behavior is not guaranteed if a service call is issued from level 0 or 1. Interrupt processes, which are interrupts not managed by RX78K0R, must be set to level 0 or 1. There is, however, an exception: user applications that disable multiple interrupts (see below) can set interrupts to level 2 or 3.

9.4.2 Controlling enabling/disabling of interrupts in the RX78K0R

The RX78K0R uses the "ISP1" and "ISP0" bits in the PSW register to enable and disable interrupts. Set ISP1 to 0 and ISP0 to 1 to disable interrupts in the RX78K0R. Set ISP1 to 1 and ISP0 to 1 to enable interrupts in the RX78K0R.

Figure 9-2 ISP1 and ISP0 Bits in PSW Register



The "IE" bit of the RX78K0R's PSW register inherits the value of the service call or RX78K0R-function issuer. EI and DI instructions do not manipulate the "IE" value. As exceptions, however, there are places in the RX78K0R where EI and DI instructions are used.

- Immediately before starting a task specifying interrupts as disabled, a DI instruction is used to set IE to 0.
- Immediately before starting a task specifying interrupts as enabled, an EI instruction is used to set IE to 1.
- Immediately before starting the idle routine, an EI instruction is used to set IE to 1.
- Inside the `__kernel_int_entry` function, which performs interrupt handler start processing, IE is set to 1.

9.4.3 Controlling enabling/disabling of interrupts in user processes

User applications use the EI function (or EI instruction) and DI function (or DI instruction) to manipulate interrupts. In a task or other user process, using the DI function disables all maskable interrupts from being accepted; using the EI function enables maskable interrupts to be accepted in accordance with the state of the "ISP1" and "ISP0" bits.

The RX78K0R sets whether interrupts are enabled or disabled upon start of the user process. The states are listed below.

Table 9-2 States Enabling and Disabling Interrupts upon Process Start

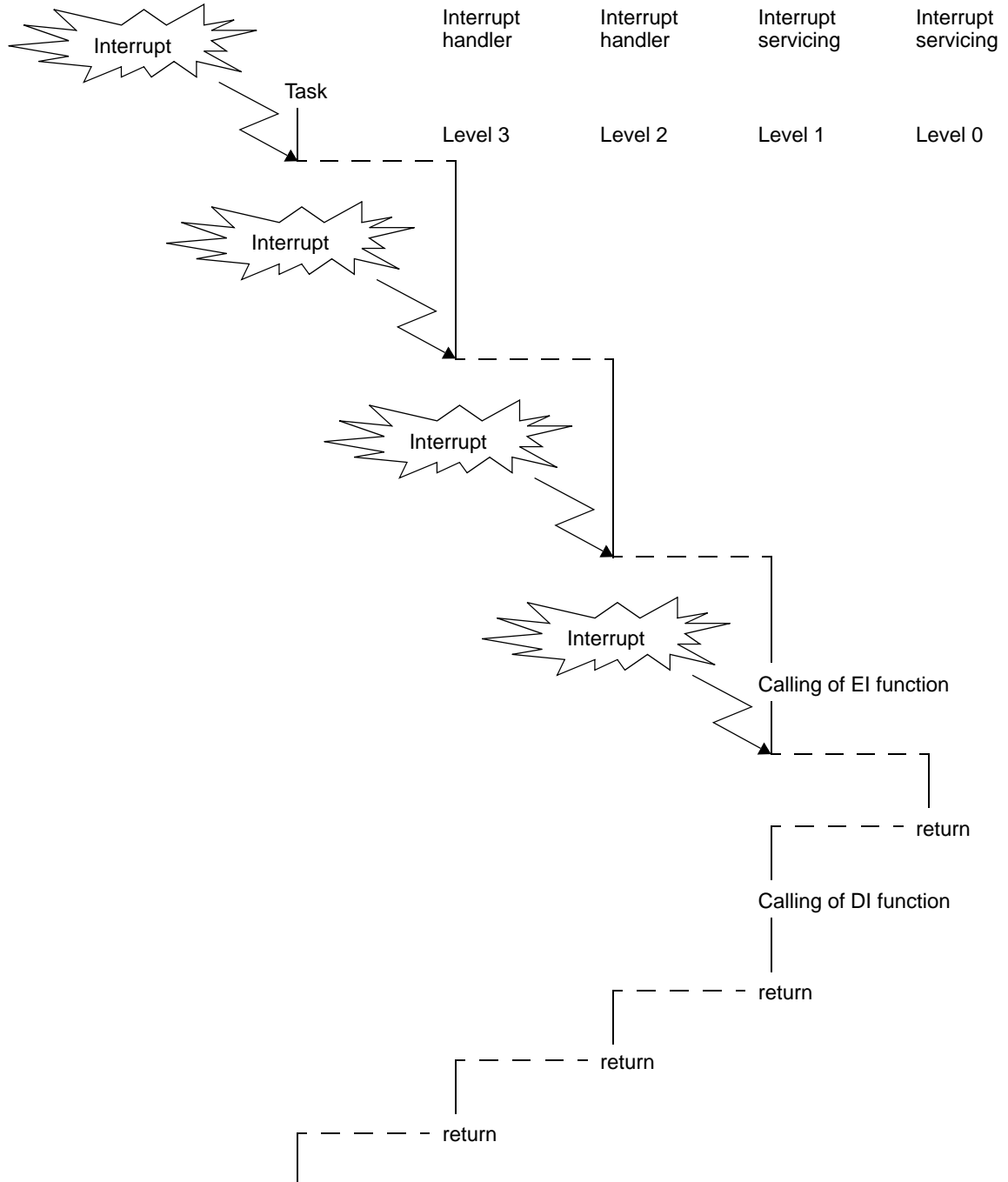
Process to Start		IE	ISP1	ISP0	Interrupt Enabled/Disabled on Start
Initialization routine		0	1	1	Interrupts disabled (behavior is not guaranteed when it is enabled by the process)
Idle routine		1	1	1	Interrupts enabled; all interrupt levels accepted
Task	When interrupts specified as enabled	1	1	1	Interrupts enabled; all interrupt levels accepted
	When interrupts specified as disabled	0	1	1	Interrupts disabled (if enabled, all interrupt levels accepted)
Cyclic handler	When a level-2 interrupt occurs	1	0	1	Interrupts enabled; level-0 and level-1 levels accepted
	When a level-3 interrupt occurs	1	1	0	Interrupts enabled; level-0, level-1, and level-2 levels accepted
Interrupt handler	When a level-2 interrupt occurs	1	0	1	Interrupts enabled; level-0 and level-1 levels accepted
	When a level-3 interrupt occurs	1	1	0	Interrupts enabled; level-0, level-1, and level-2 levels accepted
Interrupt servicing	When a level-0 interrupt occurs	0	0	0	Interrupts disabled (if enabled, a level-0 interrupt accepted)
	When a level-1 interrupt occurs	0	0	0	Interrupts disabled (if enabled, a level-0 interrupt accepted)
	When a level-2 interrupt occurs	0	0	1	Interrupts disabled (if enabled, level-0 and level-1 interrupts accepted)
	When a level-3 interrupt occurs	0	1	0	Interrupts disabled (if enabled, level-0, level-1, and level-2 interrupts accepted)

Note that a separate "IE" state is maintained for each task. If a suspended task is resumed, the IE state before suspension is restored.

9.5 Multiple Interrupts

The reoccurrence of an interrupt within an interrupt handler is called "multiple interrupt". The following shows the flow of the processing for handling multiple interrupts.

Figure 9-3 Multiple Interrupts



When control moves to an interrupt handler, then the state changes to acceptance of maskable interrupts enabled ("IE = 1"). For this reason, multiple interrupts are generally accepted from interrupt handlers. Multiple interrupts are likewise accepted from timer interrupts and cyclic handlers called from them.

When control moves to an interrupt process, then the state changes to acceptance of maskable interrupts disabled (because the RX78K0R does not mediate, the behavior is in accordance with that of the 78K0R microcontroller). For this reason, multiple interrupts are generally not accepted from interrupt processes. To enable the acceptance of multiple interrupts, it is necessary to call the EI function from the interrupt process. It is not allowed to accept multiple interrupt handlers from an interrupt process, and behavior is not guaranteed if this occurs.

If a user application enables multiple interrupts, then it is necessary to set the interrupt level of the interrupt handler/process as shown below.

Table 9-3 Settable Interrupt Level (Enabling Multiple Interrupts from User Application)

	Interrupt Handler	Interrupt Servicing
Interrupt level 0	Not available	Available
Interrupt level 1	Not available	Available
Interrupt level 2	Available	Not available
Interrupt level 3	Available	Not available

If a user application disables multiple interrupts, then it is necessary to set the interrupt level of the interrupt handler/process to one of the patterns shown below.

- Pattern 1: Set the level of all interrupt handlers and interrupt processes to 2.
 Pattern 2: Set the level of all interrupt handlers and interrupt processes to 3.
 Pattern 3: Set the level of all interrupt handlers and to 2, and the level of all interrupt processes to either 2 or 3. Interrupts are disabled during an interrupt process with an interrupt level of 3 (IE = 0).

Table 9-4 Settable Interrupt Level (Disabling Multiple Interrupts from User Application)

	Pattern 1		Pattern 2		Pattern 3	
	Interrupt Handler	Interrupt Servicing	Interrupt Handler	Interrupt Servicing	Interrupt Handler	Interrupt Servicing
Interrupt level 0	Not available	Not available	Not available	Not available	Not available	Not available
Interrupt level 1	Not available	Not available	Not available	Not available	Not available	Not available
Interrupt level 2	Available	Available	Not available	Not available	Available	Available
Interrupt level 3	Not available	Not available	Available	Available	Not available	Available (*)

(*) Interrupts are disabled during this interrupt process (IE = 0).

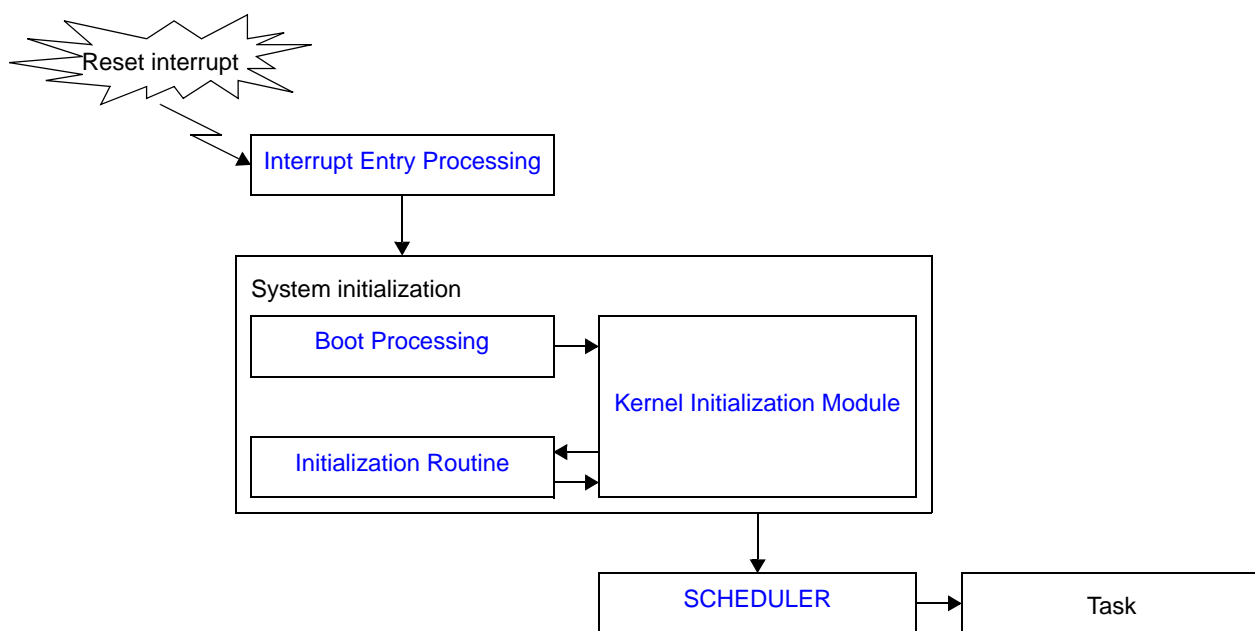
CHAPTER 10 SYSTEM CONFIGURATION MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS

This chapter describes the system configuration management functions performed by the RX78K0R.

10.1 Outline

The system configuration management functions of the RX78K0R provides system initialization processing, which is required from the reset interrupt output until control is passed to the task, and version information referencing processing. The following shows a processing flow from when a reset interrupt occurs until the control is passed to the task.

Figure 10-1 Processing Flow (System Initialization)



10.2 Boot Processing

Boot processing is a routine dedicated to initialization processing that is extracted as a user-own coding module to initialize the minimum required hardware for the RX78K0R to perform processing. Boot processing is called from [Interrupt Entry Processing](#) that is assigned to the vector table address to which the CPU forcibly passes the control when a reset interrupt occurs.

10.2.1 Define boot processing

Boot processing registration is realized by coding [Interrupt Entry Processing](#) (branch instruction to boot processing) to the vector table address to which the CPU forcibly passes control upon occurrence of a reset interrupt.

The code of [Interrupt Entry Processing](#) varies depending on whether boot processing is allocated to the near area or to the far area.

The following shows examples for coding [Interrupt Entry Processing](#).

[When boot processing is allocated to the near area]

```
RESET  CSEG  AT      0000h  ;Vector table address setting
      DW      _boot      ;Jump to boot processing _boot
```

[When boot processing is allocated to the far area]

```
      EXTRN  intent_RESET      ;Declares symbol external reference

RESET  CSEG  AT      0000h  ;Vector table address setting
      DW      intent_RESET

intent  CSEG  UNITP
intent_RESET:
      BR      !!_boot          ;Jump to boot processing _boot
```

10.2.2 Basic form of boot processing

Write Boot processing as a function that does not include arguments and return values (function name: any name). The following shows the basic form of boot processing.

```
      PUBLIC  _boot
      EXTRN  __@STBEG, _hdwinit, __urx_start
@@LCODE CSEG  BASE
_boot:
      SEL      RB0              ;Sets register bank

      MOVW     SP, #LOWW_@STBEG ;Sets stack pointer SP

      CALL     !!_hdwinit        ;Initializes internal units and peripheral
                                ;controllers

      MOV      B, #0FEDFH-0FE20H+1 ;Clears saddr area
      CLRW     AX

LSADR1:
      DEC      B
      DEC      B
      MOVW     0FE20H[B], AX
      BNZ      $LSADR1

      MOV      ES, #0FH          ;Clears RAM area
      MOVW     BC, #0FE20H-0D700H
      CLRW     AX

LSADR2:
      DECW     BC
```

DECW	BC	
MOVW	0D700H[BC], AX	
CMPW	AX, BC	
BNZ	\$LSADR2	
BR	!!__urx_start	;Jump to Kernel Initialization Module
END		

10.2.3 Internal processing of boot processing

Boot processing is a routine dedicated to initialization processing called from [Interrupt Entry Processing](#) without using the RX78K0R. Therefore, note the following points when coding boot processing.

- Coding method
Code boot processing in assembly language.
- Stack switching
Setting of stack pointer SP is not executed at the point when control is passed to boot processing.
To use a boot processing dedicated stack, setting of stack pointer SP must therefore be coded at the beginning of the boot processing.
- Interrupt status
The [Kernel Initialization Module](#) is not executed at the point when control is passed to boot processing. The system may therefore hang up when an interrupt is created before the processing is completed. To avoid this, explicitly prohibit acknowledgment of maskable interrupts by manipulating interrupt enable flag IE of program status word PSW during boot processing.
- Register bank setting
The RX78K0R prohibits switching of a register bank that was set before __urx_start is called in boot processing to another register bank (except for the case when interrupt servicing not managed by the RX78K0R).
- Service call issuance
The RX78K0R prohibits issuance of service calls in boot processing.

The following lists processing that should be executed in boot processing.

- Setting of stack pointer SP
- Setting of interrupt enable flag IE
- Initialization of internal units and peripheral controllers
- Initialization of RAM area (initialization of memory area without initial value, copying of initialization data)
- Passing of control to [Kernel Initialization Module](#) (function name: __urx_start)

Note Setting of stack pointer SP is required only when a stack dedicated to boot processing is used in boot processing.

10.3 Initialization Routine

The initialization routine is a routine dedicated to initialization processing that is extracted as a user-own coding module to initialize the hardware dependent on the user execution environment (such as the peripheral controller), and is called from the [Kernel Initialization Module](#).

10.3.1 Define initialization routine

In the RX78K0R, the method of registering an initialization routine is limited to "static registration by the [Kernel Initialization Module](#)".

Initialization routines therefore cannot be created dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

- Static define

Static initialization routine registration is realized by coding initialization routines by using the prescribed function name `init_handler`.

The RX78K0R executes initialization routine registration processing based on relevant symbol information, using the [Kernel Initialization Module](#), and handles the registered initialization routines as management targets.

10.3.2 Undefine initialization routine

In the RX78K0R, initialization routines registered statically by the [Kernel Initialization Module](#) cannot be unregistered dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

10.3.3 Basic form of initialization routine

Write initialization routines using void type functions that do not have arguments (function: `init_handler`).

The following shows the basic form of initialization routine.

[C Language]

```
#include    <kernel.h>           /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>        /*System information header file definition*/

void
init_handler ( void )
{
    /* ..... */                /*Main processing*/

    return;                      /*Terminate initialization routine*/
}
```

[Assembly Language]

```
$INCLUDE    (kernel.inc)         ;Standard header file definition
$INCLUDE    (kernel_id.inc)      ;System information header file definition

PUBLIC     _init_handler
CSEG
_init_handler:
    ; .....                     ;Main processing

    RET                                ;Terminate initialization routine
END
```

10.3.4 Internal processing of initialization routine

Moreover, the RX78K0R executes "original pre-processing" when passing control to the initialization routine, as well as "original post-processing" when regaining control from the initialization routine.

Therefore, note the following points when coding initialization routines.

- Coding method
Code initialization routines using C or assembly language in the format shown in "[10.3.3 Basic form of initialization routine](#)".
- Stack switching
The RX78K0R executes processing to switch to the system stack when passing control to the initialization routine, and processing to switch to the stack for the [Kernel Initialization Module](#) when regaining control from the initialization routine.
The user is therefore not required to code processing related to stack switching in initialization routines.
- Interrupt status
Maskable interrupt acknowledgement is prohibited in the RX78K0R when control is passed to the initialization routine. [Kernel Initialization Module](#) is not completed at the point when control is passed to the initialization routine. The system may therefore hang up when acknowledgment of maskable interrupts is explicitly enabled within the initialization routine. Therefore, enabling maskable interrupt acknowledgment in the initialization routine is prohibited in the RX78K0R.
- Service call issuance
The RX78K0R prohibits issuance of service calls in initialization routines.

The following lists processing that should be executed in initialization routines.

- Initialization of internal units and peripheral controllers
- Initialization of RAM area (initialization of memory area without initial value, copying of initialization data)
- Returning of control to [Kernel Initialization Module](#)

10.4 Kernel Initialization Module

The kernel initialization module is a dedicated initialization processing routine provided for initializing the minimum required software for the RX78K0R to perform processing, and is called from [Boot Processing](#).

The following processing is executed in the kernel initialization module.

- Securement of memory area
- Creating and registering management objects
- Calling of initialization routine
- Passing of control to scheduler

Note The kernel initialization module is part of the functions provided by the RX78K0R. The user therefore need not code the processing contents of the kernel initialization module.

10.5 Reference Version Information

Version information is referenced by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- [ref_ver](#)

The service call stores version information packet (such as kernel maker's code) to the area specified by parameter *pk_rver*.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    T_RVER    pk_rver;            /*Declares data structure*/
    UH        maker;              /*Declares variable*/
    UH        prid;               /*Declares variable*/
    UH        spver;              /*Declares variable*/
    UH        prver;              /*Declares variable*/
    UH        prno[4];            /*Declares variable*/

    /* ..... */

    ref_ver ( &pk_rver );         /*Reference version information*/

    maker = pk_rver.maker;        /*Reference Kernel maker's code*/
    prid = pk_rver.prid;          /*Reference identification number of the kernel*/
    spver = pk_rver.spver;        /*Reference version number of the ITRON
                                   Specification*/
    prver = pk_rver.prver;        /*Reference version number of the kernel*/
    prno[0] = pk_rver.prno[0];    /*Reference management information of the kernel
                                   product (version type)*/
    prno[1] = pk_rver.prno[1];    /*Reference management information of the kernel
                                   product (memory model)*/

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note For details about the version information packet, refer to "[12.5.8 Version information packet](#)".

CHAPTER 11 SCHEDULER

This chapter describes the scheduler of the RX78K0R.

11.1 Outline

The scheduling functions provided by the RX78K0R consist of functions manage/decide the order in which tasks are executed by monitoring the transition states of dynamically changing tasks, so that the CPU use right is given to the optimum task.

11.2 Driving Method

The RX78K0R employs the [Event-driven system](#) in which the scheduler is activated when an event (trigger) occurs.

- Event-driven system

Under the event-driven system of the RX78K0R, the scheduler is activated upon occurrence of the events listed below and dispatch processing (task scheduling processing) is executed.

- Issuance of service call that may cause task state transition
- Issuance of instruction for returning from non-task (cyclic handler, interrupt handler, etc.)
- Occurrence of clock interrupt used when achieving [TIME MANAGEMENT FUNCTIONS](#)

11.3 Scheduling System

As task scheduling methods, the RX78K0R employs the [Priority level method](#), which uses the priority level defined for each task, and the [FCFS method](#), which uses the time elapsed from the point when a task becomes subject to RX78K0R scheduling.

- Priority level method

A task with the highest priority level is selected from among all the tasks that have entered an executable state (RUNNING state or READY state), and given the CPU use right.

Note In the RX78K0R, a task having a smaller priority number is given a higher priority.

- FCFS method

The same priority level can be defined for multiple tasks in the RX78K0R. Therefore, multiple tasks with the highest priority level, which is used as the criterion for task selection under the [Priority level method](#), may exist simultaneously.

To remedy this, dispatch processing (task scheduling processing) is executed on a first come first served (FCFS) basis, and the task for which the longest interval of time has elapsed since it entered an executable state (READY state) is selected as the task to which the CPU use right is granted.

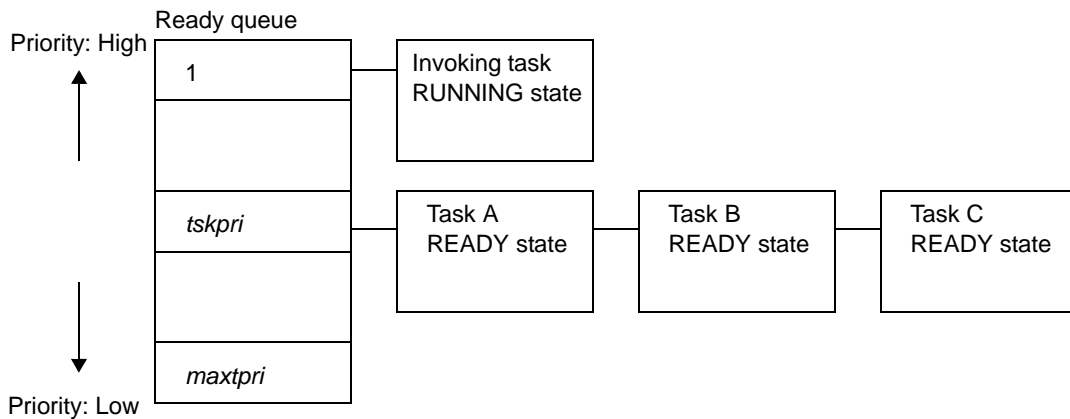
11.4 Ready Queue

The RX78K0R uses a "ready queue" to implement task scheduling.

The ready queue is a hash table that uses priority as the key, and tasks that have entered an executable state (READY state or RUNNING state) are queued in FIFO order. Therefore, the scheduler realizes the RX78K0R's scheduling method (priority level or FCFS) by executing task detection processing from the highest priority level of the ready queue upon activation, and upon detection of queued tasks, giving the CPU use right to the first task of the proper priority level.

The following shows the case where multiple tasks are queued to a ready queue.

Figure 11-1 Implementation of Scheduling Method (Priority Level Method or FCFS Method)



11.4.1 Create ready queue

In the RX78K0R, the method of creating a ready queue is limited to "static creation by the [Kernel Initialization Module](#)".

Ready queues therefore cannot be created dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

- Static create

Static ready queue creation is realized by defining [Task priority information](#) in the system configuration file.

The RX78K0R executes ready queue creation processing based on data stored in information files, using the [Kernel Initialization Module](#), and handles the created ready queues as management targets.

11.4.2 Delete ready queue

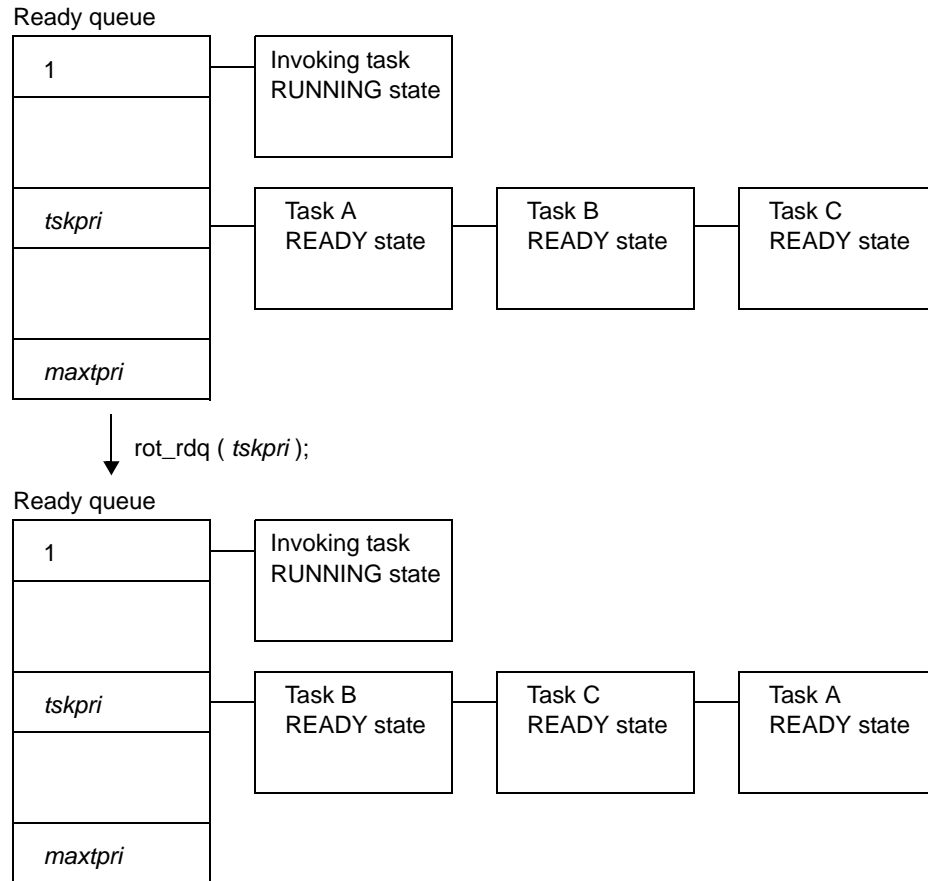
In the RX78K0R, ready queues created statically by the [Kernel Initialization Module](#) cannot be deleted dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

11.4.3 Rotate task precedence

The RX78K0R provides a function to change the queuing order of tasks from the processing program, explicitly switching the task execution order.

The following shows the status transition when the task queuing order is changed.

Figure 11-2 Rotate Task Precedence



A ready queue is rotated by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- `rot_rdq, irot_rdq`

These service calls re-queue the first task of the ready queue corresponding to the priority specified by parameter *tskpri* to the end of the queue to change the task execution order explicitly.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#include    <kernel.h>           /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>        /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_cychdr ( void )
{
    PRI      tskpri = 8;          /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ..... */

    irot_rdq ( tskpri );          /*Rotate task precedence*/

    /* ..... */

    return;                       /*Terminate cyclic handler*/
}
```

Note 1 This service call does not perform queuing of rotation requests. If no task is queued to the ready queue corresponding to the relevant priority, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

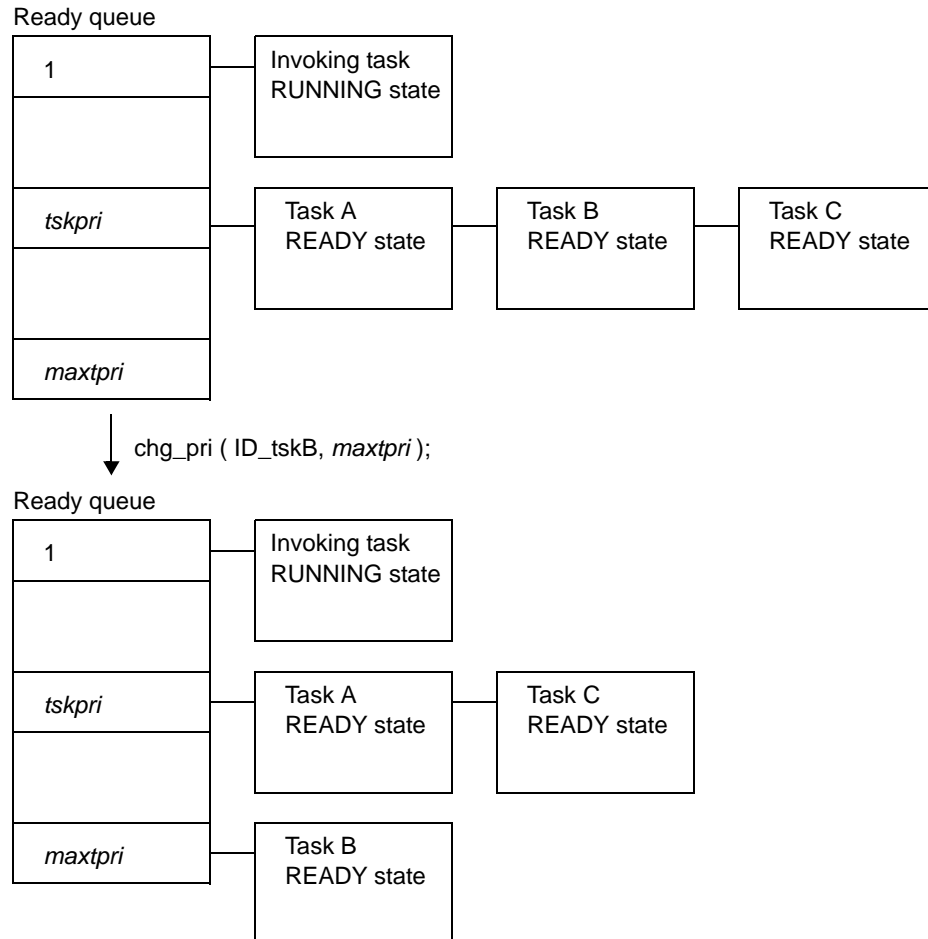
Note 2 Round-robin scheduling can be implemented by issuing this service call via a cyclic handler in a constant cycle.

11.4.4 Change task priority

The RX78K0R provides a function to change the priority level of tasks from the processing program, explicitly switching the task execution order.

The following shows the status transition when this task priority is changed.

Figure 11-3 Change Task Priority



A priority is changed by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- `chg_pri`, `ichg_pri`

This service call changes the priority of the task specified by parameter *tskid* (current priority) to a value specified by parameter *tskpri*.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ID        tskid = ID_tskA;    /*Declares and initializes variable*/
    PRI        tskpri = 9;        /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    /* ..... */

    chg_pri ( tskid, tskpri );    /*Change task priority*/

    /* ..... */
}
```

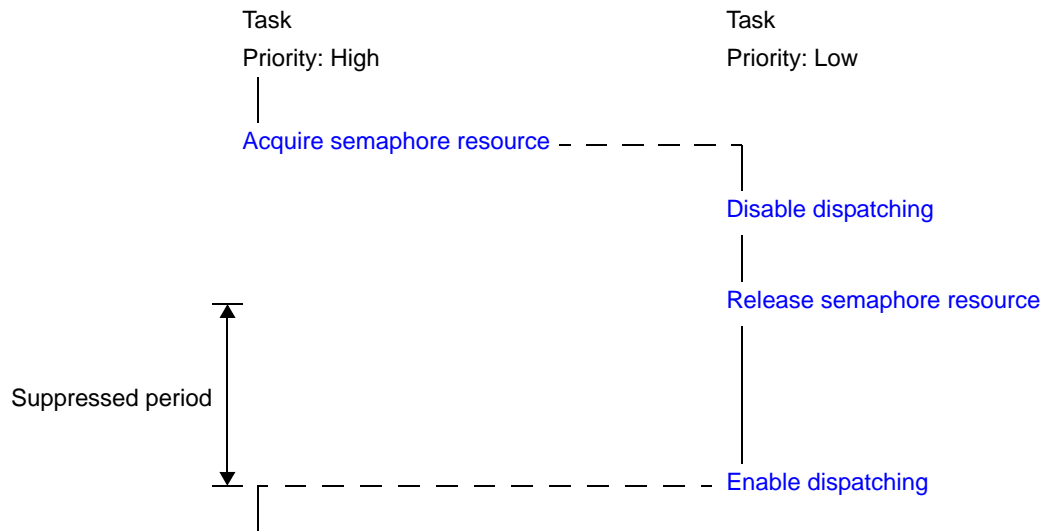
Note If the target task is in the RUNNING or READY state after this service call is issued, this service call re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority specified by parameter *tskpri*, following priority change processing.

11.5 Scheduling Disabling

The RX78K0R provides a function to disable scheduler activation by referencing the system state from the processing program and explicitly prohibiting dispatch processing (task scheduling processing).

The following shows a processing flow when using the scheduling suppressing function.

Figure 11-4 Scheduling Suppression Function



11.5.1 Disable dispatching

A task is moved to the dispatching disabled state by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- `dis_dsp`

This service call changes the system status to the dispatching disabled state.

As a result, dispatch processing (task scheduling) is disabled from when this service call is issued until `ena_dsp` is issued.

If a service call (`chg_pri`, `sig_sem`, etc.) accompanying dispatch processing is issued during the interval from when this service call is issued until `ena_dsp` is issued, the RX78K0R executes only processing such as queue manipulation, counter manipulation, etc., and the actual dispatch processing is delayed until `ena_dsp` is issued, upon which the actual dispatch processing is performed in batch.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    /* ..... */

    dis_dsp ( );                  /*Disable dispatching*/

    /* ..... */                  /*Dispatching disabled state*/

    ena_dsp ( );                  /*Enable dispatching*/

    /* ..... */
}
```

Note 1 This service call does not perform queuing of disable requests. If the system is in the dispatching disabled state, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

Note 2 The dispatching disabled state changed by issuing this service call must be cancelled before the task that issued this service call moves to the DORMANT state.

11.5.2 Enable dispatching

The dispatching disabled state is cancelled by issuing the following service call from the processing program.

- `ena_dsp`

This service call changes the system status to the dispatching enabled state.

As a result, dispatch processing (task scheduling) that has been disabled by issuing `dis_dsp` is enabled.

If a service call (`chg_pri`, `sig_sem`, etc.) accompanying dispatch processing is issued during the interval from when `dis_dsp` is issued until this service call is issued, the RX78K0R executes only processing such as queue manipulation, counter manipulation, etc., and the actual dispatch processing is delayed until this service call is issued, upon which the actual dispatch processing is performed in batch.

The following describes an example for coding this service call.

```
#pragma      rtos_task   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>          /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>       /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    /* ..... */

    dis_dsp ( );                  /*Disable dispatching*/

    /* ..... */                  /*Dispatching disabled state*/

    ena_dsp ( );                  /*Enable dispatching*/

    /* ..... */
}
```

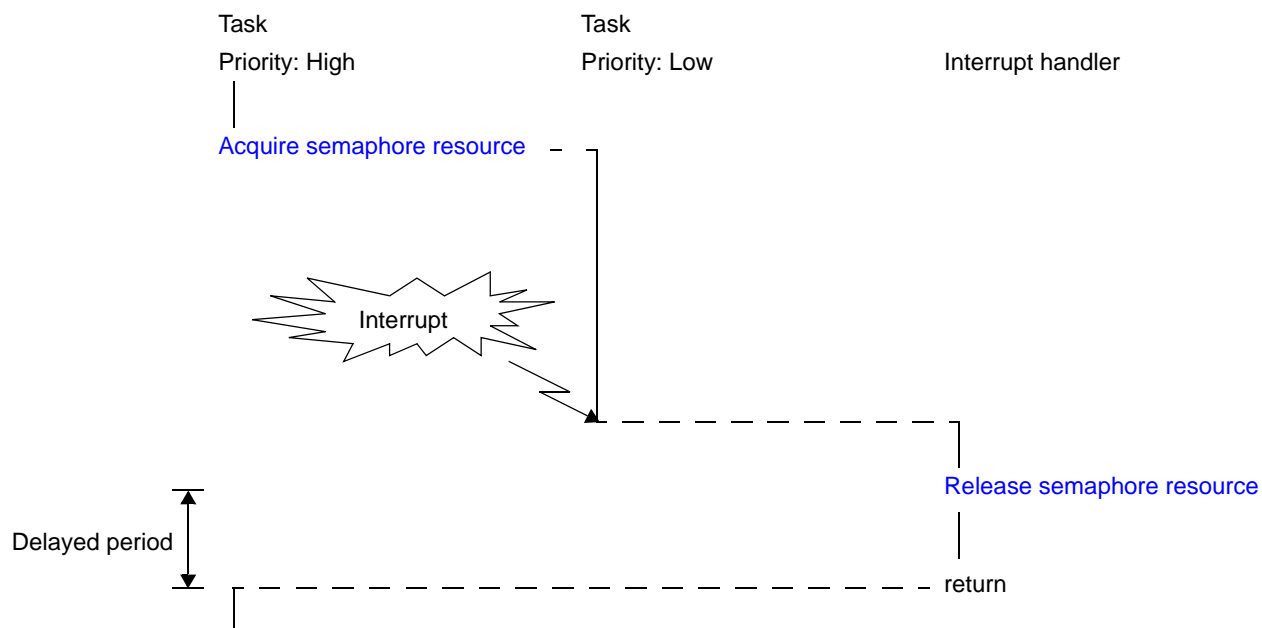
Note This service call does not queue enable requests. If the system is in the dispatching enabled state, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

11.6 Delay of Scheduling

If a service call (`ichg_pri`, `isig_sem`, etc.) accompanying dispatch processing (task scheduling processing) is issued in order to quickly complete the processing in a non-task (cyclic handler, interrupt handler, etc.) during the interval until the processing in the non-task ends, the RX78K0R executes only processing such as queue manipulation, counter manipulation, etc., and the actual dispatch processing is delayed until a return instruction is issued by the non-task, upon which the actual dispatch processing is performed in batch.

The following shows a processing flow when a service call that involves dispatch processing in a non-task is issued.

Figure 11-5 Delay of Scheduling



11.7 Idle Routine

The idle routine is a routine dedicated to idle processing that is extracted as a user-own coding module to utilize the standby function provided by the CPU (to achieve the low-power consumption system), and is called from the scheduler when there no longer remains a task subject to scheduling by the RX78K0R (task in the RUNNING or READY state) in the system.

11.7.1 Define idle routine

In the RX78K0R, the method of registering an idle routine is limited to "static registration by the [Kernel Initialization Module](#)".

Idle routines therefore cannot be created dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

- Static define

Static idle routine registration is realized by coding idle routines by using the prescribed function name `idle_handler`.

The RX78K0R executes idle routine registration processing based on relevant symbol information, using the [Kernel Initialization Module](#), and handles the registered idle routines as management targets.

11.7.2 Undefine idle routine

In the RX78K0R, idle routines registered statically by the [Kernel Initialization Module](#) cannot be unregistered dynamically using a method such as issuing a service call from a processing program.

11.7.3 Basic form of idle routine

Write idle routines using void type functions that do not have arguments (function: `idle_handler`).

The following shows the basic form of idle routine.

[C Language]

```
#include    <kernel.h>           /*Standard header file definition*/
#include    <kernel_id.h>        /*System information header file definition*/

void
idle_handler ( void )
{
    /* ..... */                /*Main processing*/

    return;                      /*Terminate idle routine*/
}
```

[Assembly Language]

```
$INCLUDE    (kernel.inc)         ;Standard header file definition
$INCLUDE    (kernel_id.inc)      ;System information header file definition

    PUBLIC   _idle_handler
    CSEG
_idle_handler:
    ; .....                     ;Main processing

    RET                                ;Terminate idle routine
    END
```

11.7.4 Internal processing of idle routine

The RX78K0R handles the idle routine as a "non-task (module independent from tasks)".

Moreover, the RX78K0R executes "original pre-processing" when passing control to the idle routine, as well as "original post-processing" when regaining control from the idle routine.

Therefore, note the following points when coding idle routines.

- Coding method

Code idle routines using C or assembly language in the format shown in "[11.7.3 Basic form of idle routine](#)".

- Stack switching

The RX78K0R executes processing to switch to the system stack when passing control to the idle routine, and processing to switch to the stack for the switch destination processing program (system stack or task stack) when regaining control from the idle routine.

The user is therefore not required to code processing related to stack switching in idle routines.

- Interrupt status

Maskable interrupt acknowledgement is prohibited in the RX78K0R when control is passed to the idle routine.

The user is therefore not required to write the code related to maskable interrupt acknowledgment in idle routines.

- Service call issuance

The RX78K0R prohibits issuance of service calls in idle routines.

The following lists processing that should be executed in idle routines.

- Effective use of standby function provided by the CPU

CHAPTER 12 SERVICE CALLS

This chapter describes the service calls supported by the RX78K0R.

12.1 Outline

The service calls provided by the RX78K0R are service routines provided for indirectly manipulating the resources (tasks, semaphores, etc.) managed by the RX78K0R from a processing program. The service calls provided by the RX78K0R are listed below by management module.

- Task Management Functions

`act_tsk, iact_tsk, can_act, sta_tsk, ista_tsk, ext_tsk, ter_tsk, chg_pri, ichg_pri, ref_tsk`

- Task Dependent Synchronization Functions

`slp_tsk, tslp_tsk, wup_tsk, iwup_tsk, can_wup, ican_wup, rel_wai, irel_wai, sus_tsk, isus_tsk, rsm_tsk, irsm_tsk, frsm_tsk, ifrsm_tsk, dly_tsk`

- Synchronization and Communication Functions (Semaphores)

`sig_sem, isig_sem, wai_sem, pol_sem, twai_sem, ref_sem`

- Synchronization and Communication Functions (Eventflags)

`set_flg, iset_flg, clr_flg, wai_flg, pol_flg, twai_flg, ref_flg`

- Synchronization and Communication Functions (Mailboxes)

`snd_mbx, rcv_mbx, prcv_mbx, trcv_mbx, ref_mbx`

- Memory Pool Management Functions

`get_mpf, pget_mpf, tget_mpf, rel_mpf, ref_mpf`

- Time Management Functions

`sta_cyc, stp_cyc, ref_cyc`

- System State Management Functions

`rot_rdq, irot_rdq, get_tid, iget_tid, loc_cpu, iloc_cpu, unl_cpu, iunl_cpu, ena_dsp, dis_dsp, sns_ctx, sns_loc, sns_dsp, sns_dpn`

- System Configuration Management Functions

`ref_ver`

12.2 Call Service Call

The method for calling service calls from processing programs coded either in C or assembly language is described below.

12.2.1 C language

By calling using the same method as for normal C functions, service call parameters are handed over to the RX78K0R as arguments and the relevant processing is executed.

[C Language]

```
#pragma      rtos_func   func_task

#include      <kernel.h>           /*Standard header file definition*/
#include      <kernel_id.h>        /*System information header file definition*/

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    ER        ercd;                /*Declares variable*/
    ID        tskid = ID_tskA;     /*Declares and initializes variable*/

    ercd = act_tsk ( tskid );      /*Call service call*/

    /* ..... */

    ext_tsk ( );                  /*Call service call*/
}
```

Note To call the service calls provided by the RX78K0R from a processing program, the header files listed below must be coded (include processing).

kernel.h:	Standard header file (for C language)
kernel_id.h:	System information header file (for C language)

12.2.2 Assembly language

By calling with the CALL instruction after performing the parameter settings according to the RA78K0R's function calling rules, the service call parameters are handed over to the RX78K0R and the relevant processing is executed.

[Assembly Language]

```

$INCLUDE    (kernel.inc)           ;standard header file definition
$INCLUDE    (kernel_id.inc)        ;System information header file definition

        DESG
_ercd:  DS      (2)                  ;Secures area for storing return value

        PUBLIC  _func_task
        CSEG
_func_task:
        PUSH    BC      ;Stores the higher 2 bytes of argument exinf into stack
        PUSH    AX      ;Stores the lower 2 bytes of argument exinf into stack

        MOVW    AX, #ID_tskA      ;Parameter setting
        CALL    !!_act_tsk        ;Call service call
        MOVW    AX, BC
        MOVW    !_ercd, AX        ;Return value setting

        ; .....

        BR      !!_ext_tsk        ;Call service call
        END

```

Note To call the service calls provided by the RX78K0R from a processing program, the header files listed below must be coded (include processing).

kernel.inc: Standard header file (for assembly language)
kernel_id.inc: System information header file (for assembly language)

12.3 Amount of Stack Used by Service Calls

The RX78K0R saves/restores the values of registers PC, PSW and HL to/from the stack of the processing program that issued the relevant service call (task stack or system stack) during preprocessing/postprocessing of the service call.

The stack of the processing program that issued a service call is used for storing the service call arguments, and the system stack is used as the stack area required for executing internal processing of the service call.

When securing the task stack and system stack areas, the stack amount consumed upon issuance of a service call must therefore be considered.

The following lists the stack sizes required upon issuance of a service call.

Table 12-1 Stack Amount Used by Service Call (Unit: Bytes)

Service Call	For Service Call Arguments	For Internal Processing by Program Issued the Service Call	For System Stack Internal Processing
Task Management Functions			
act_tsk, iact_tsk	0	10	4
can_act	0	10	4
sta_tsk, ista_tsk	0	8	4
ext_tsk	0	8	4
ter_tsk	0	8	4
chg_pri, ichg_pri	2	8	4
ref_tsk	4	8	4
Task Dependent Synchronization Functions			
slp_tsk	0	8	4
tslp_tsk	0	8	4
wup_tsk, iwup_tsk	0	8	4
can_wup, ican_wup	0	8	4
rel_wai, irel_wai	0	8	4
sus_tsk, isus_tsk	0	8	4
rsm_tsk, irsm_tsk	0	8	4
frsm_tsk, ifrsm_tsk	0	8	4
dly_tsk	0	8	4
Synchronization and Communication Functions (Semaphores)			
sig_sem, isig_sem	0	8	4
wai_sem	0	8	4
pol_sem	0	8	4
twai_sem	4	8	4
ref_sem	4	8	4
Synchronization and Communication Functions (Eventflags)			
set_flg, iset_flg	2	8	4
clr_flg	2	8	4
wai_flg	8	8	6
pol_flg	8	8	6
twai_flg	12	8	6
ref_flg	4	8	4

Service Call	For Service Call Arguments	For Internal Processing by Program Issued the Service Call	For System Stack Internal Processing
Synchronization and Communication Functions (Mailboxes)			
snd_mbx	4	8	4
rcv_mbx	4	8	6
prcv_mbx	4	8	6
trcv_mbx	8	8	6
ref_mbx	4	8	4
Memory Pool Management Functions			
get_mpf	4	8	6
pget_mpf	4	8	6
tget_mpf	8	8	6
rel_mpf	4	8	6
ref_mpf	4	8	4
Time Management Functions			
sta_cyc	0	8	4
stp_cyc	0	8	4
ref_cyc	4	8	4
System State Management Functions			
rot_rdq, irot_rdq	0	8	4
get_tid, iget_tid	0	8	4
loc_cpu, iloc_cpu	0	8	4
unl_cpu, iunl_cpu	0	8	4
ena_dsp	0	8	4
dis_dsp	0	8	4
sns_ctx	0	8	4
sns_loc	0	8	4
sns_dsp	0	8	4
sns_dpn	0	8	4
System Configuration Management Functions			
ref_ver	0	8	4

12.4 Data Macros

This section explains the data macros (for data types, current state, or the like) used when issuing a service call provided by the RX78K0R.

12.4.1 Data types

The following lists the data types of parameters specified when issuing a service call.

Macro definition of the data type is performed by header file <rx_root>\inc78k0r\types.h, which is called from standard header file <rx_root>\inc78k0r\kernel.h.

Table 12-2 Data Types

Macro	Data Type	Description
UH	unsigned short int	Unsigned 16-bit integer
*VP	void __far	Pointer to an unknown data type
UINT	unsigned int	Unsigned 16-bit integer
VP_INT	signed long int	Pointer to an unknown data type, or a signed 32-bit integer
ID <small>Note</small>	unsigned char	Object ID number
BOOL	signed int	Boolean value
STAT	unsigned short int	Object state
ER	signed short int	Return value
ER_UINT	unsigned short int	Unsigned 16-bit integer
PRI	signed char	Priority
FLGPTN	unsigned short int	Bit pattern
MODE	unsigned char	Service call operational mode
TMO	signed long int	Timeout (unit: ticks)
RELTIM	unsigned long int	Relative time (unit: ticks)

Note The ID type definition in the RX78K0R differs from that of the uLTRON 4.0 specification.

12.4.2 Current state

The following lists the status at the point acquired by issuing a service call ([ref_tsk](#), [ref_cyc](#)).
Macro definition of the current status is performed by standard header file <rx_root>\inc78k0r\kernel.h.

Table 12-3 Current State

Macro	Value	Description
TTS_RUN	0x01	RUNNING state
TTS_RDY	0x02	READY state
TTS_WAI	0x04	WAITING state
TTS_SUS	0x08	SUSPENDED state
TTS_WAS	0x0c	WAITING-SUSPENDED state
TTS_DMT	0x10	DORMANT state
TCYC_STP	0x00	Non-operational state
TCYC_STA	0x01	Operational state

12.4.3 WAITING types

The following lists WAITING types acquired by issuing a service call ([ref_tsk](#)).
Macro definition of the WAITING type is performed by standard header file <rx_root>\inc78k0r\kernel.h.

Table 12-4 WAITING Types

Macro	Value	Description
TTW_SLP	0x0001	Sleeping state.
TTW_DLY	0x0002	Delayed state.
TTW_SEM	0x0004	Waiting state for a semaphore resource.
TTW_FLG	0x0008	Waiting state for an eventflag.
TTW_MBX	0x0040	Receiving waiting state for a mailbox.
TTW_MPF	0x2000	Waiting state for a fixed-sized memory block.

12.4.4 Return value

The following lists the values returned from service calls.

Macro definition of the return value is performed by standard header file <rx_root>\inc78k0r\kernel.h.

Table 12-5 Return Value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_ILUSE	-28	Illegal service call use.
E_OBJ	-41	Object state error.
E_QOVR	-43	Queue overflow.
E_RLWAI	-49	Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai/irel_wai while waiting).
E_TMOUT	-50	Polling failure or timeout.
FALSE	0	False
TRUE	1	True

12.4.5 Conditional compile macro

The RX78K0R header files are conditionally compiled by the following macro.

Table 12-6 Conditional Compile Macro

Classification	Macro	Description
C compiler package	_NEC_EL_	The CC78K0R is used.

12.4.6 Others

The following lists other macros used when issuing a service call.

Macro definition of other macros is performed by standard header file <rx_root>\inc78k0r\kernel.h.

Table 12-7 Others

Macro	Value	Description
TSK_SELF	0	Invoking task
TPRI_INI	0	Initial priority of the task
TMO_FEVR	-1	Waiting forever
TMO_POL	0	Polling
TWF_ANDW	0x00	AND waiting condition
TWF_ORW	0x01	OR waiting condition
TPRI_SELF	0	Current priority of the invoking task
TSK_NONE	0	No applicable task
NULL	0	No applicable message

12.5 Packet Formats

This section explains the data structures (task state packet, semaphore state packet, or the like) used when issuing a service call provided by the RX78K0R.

12.5.1 Task state packet

The following shows task state packet T_RTSK used when issuing [ref_tsk](#).

Definition of task state packet T_RTSK is performed by header file <rx_root>\inc78k0r\{packet.h, packet.inc}, which is called from standard header file <rx_root>\inc78k0r\{kernel.h, kernel.inc}.

[packet.h]

```
typedef struct t_rtsk {
    STAT    tskstat;        /*Task current state*/
    PRI     tskpri;         /*Task current priority*/
    PRI     tsbpri;         /*Reserved for future use*/
    STAT    tsawait;        /*Reason for waiting*/
    ID      wobjid;         /*Object ID number for which the task is waiting*/
    TMO     lefttmo;        /*Reserved for future use*/
    UINT    actcnt;         /*Activation request count*/
    UINT    wupcnt;         /*Wakeup request count*/
    UINT    suscnt;         /*Suspension count*/
} T_RTSK;
```

[packet.inc]

rtsk_tskstat	EQU	00h	;Task current state
rtsk_tskpri	EQU	02h	;Task current priority
rtsk_tsbpri	EQU	03h	;Reserved for future use
rtsk_tsawait	EQU	04h	;Reason for waiting
rtsk_wobjid	EQU	06h	;Object ID number for which the task is waiting
rtsk_lefttmo	EQU	08h	;Reserved for future use
rtsk_actcnt	EQU	0ch	;Activation request count
rtsk_wupcnt	EQU	0eh	;Wakeup request count
rtsk_suscnt	EQU	10h	;Suspension count

The following shows details on task state packet T_RTSK.

- tskstat, rtsk_tskstat
Stores the current state of the task.
 - TTS_RUN: RUNNING state
 - TTS_RDY: READY state
 - TTS_WAI: WAITING state
 - TTS_SUS: SUSPENDED state
 - TTS_WAS: WAITING-SUSPENDED state
 - TTS_DMT: DORMANT state
- tskpri, rtsk_tskpri
Stores the current priority of the task.
- tsbpri, rtsk_tsbpri
System-reserved area.
- tsawait, rtsk_tsawait
Stores the reason for waiting.
 - TTW_NONE: Has not moved to the WAITING state.
 - TTW_SLP: Sleeping state.
 - TTW_DLY: Delayed state.
 - TTW_SEM: Waiting state for a semaphore resource.

TTW_FLG: Waiting state for an eventflag.
TTW_MBX: Receiving waiting state for a mailbox.
TTW_MPF: Waiting state for a fixed-sized memory block.

- wobjid, rtsk_wobjid
Stores the object ID number for which the task is waiting.
- lefttmo, rtsk_lefttmo
System-reserved area.
- actcnt, rtsk_actcnt
Stores the activation request count of the task.
- wupcnt, rtsk_wupcnt
Stores the wakeup request count of the task.
- suscnt, rtsk_suscnt
Stores the suspension count of the task.

12.5.2 Semaphore state packet

The following shows semaphore state packet T_RSEM used when issuing [ref_sem](#).

Definition of semaphore state packet T_RSEM is performed by header file <rx_root>\inc78k0r\{packet.h, packet.inc}, which is called from standard header file <rx_root>\inc78k0r\{kernel.h, kernel.inc}.

[packet.h]

```
typedef struct t_rsem {
    ID      wtskid;          /*ID number of the task at the head of the wait queue*/
    UINT    semcnt;          /*Current resource count*/
} T_RSEM;
```

[packet.inc]

```
rsem_wtskid      EQU    00h    ;ID number of the task at the head of the wait queue
rsem_semcnt      EQU    02h    ;Current resource count
```

The following shows details on semaphore state packet T_RSEM.

- wtskid, rsem_wtskid
Stores information whether a task is queued to the wait queue.
TSK_NONE: No applicable task.
Value: ID number of the task at the head of the wait queue
- semcnt, rsem_semcnt
Stores the current resource count of the semaphore.

12.5.3 Eventflag state packet

The following shows eventflag state packet T_RFLG used when issuing [ref_flg](#).

Definition of eventflag state packet T_RFLG is performed by header file <rx_root>\inc78k0r\{packet.h, packet.inc}, which is called from standard header file <rx_root>\inc78k0r\{kernel.h, kernel.inc}.

[packet.h]

```
typedef struct t_rflg {
    ID      wtskid;          /*ID number of the task at the head of the wait queue*/
    FLGPTN  flgptn;          /*Current bit pattern*/
} T_RFLG;
```

[packet.inc]

```
rflg_wtskid      EQU    00h    ;ID number of the task at the head of the wait queue
rflg_flgptn      EQU    02h    ;Current bit pattern
```

The following shows details on eventflag state packet T_RFLG.

- wtskid, rflg_wtskid
Stores information whether a task is queued to the wait queue.
TSK_NONE: No applicable task.
Value: ID number of the task at the head of the wait queue
- flgptn, rflg_flgptn
Stores the current bit pattern of the eventflag.

12.5.4 Message packet

The following shows message packet T_MSG and T_MSG_PRI used when issuing [snd_mbx](#), [rcv_mbx](#), [prcv_mbx](#), or [trcv_mbx](#).

Definition of message packet T_MSG and T_MSG_PRI is performed by header file <rx_root>\inc78k0r\types.h, which is called from standard header file <rx_root>\inc78k0r\kernel.h.

[Message packet for TA_MFIFO attribute]

```
typedef struct t_msg {
    struct t_msg __far *msgque; /*Reserved for future use*/
} T_MSG;
```

[Message packet for TA_MPRI attribute]

```
typedef struct t_msg_pri {
    struct t_msg __far *msgque; /*Reserved for future use*/
    PRI msgpri; /*Message priority*/
} T_MSG_PRI;
```

The following shows details on message packet T_MSG and T_MSG_PRI.

- msgque
System-reserved area.
- msgpri
Stores the priority of the message.

Note 1 In the RX78K0R, a message having a smaller priority number is given a higher priority.

Note 2 Values that can be specified for the priority of a message are limited from 1 to 31.

12.5.5 Mailbox state packet

The following shows mailbox state packet T_RMBX used when issuing [ref_mbx](#).

Definition of mailbox state packet T_RMBX is performed by header file <rx_root>\inc78k0r\{packet.h, packet.inc}, which is called from standard header file <rx_root>\inc78k0r\{kernel.h, kernel.inc}.

[packet.h]

```
typedef struct t_rmbx {
    ID      wtskid;           /*ID number of the task at the head of the wait
                             queue*/
    T_MSG   __far  *pk_msg;   /*Start address of the message packet at the head
                             of the message queue*/
} T_RMBX;
```

[packet.inc]

rmbx_wtskid	EQU	00h	;ID number of the task at the head of the wait ;queue
rmbx_pk_msg	EQU	02h	;Start address of the message packet at the head ;of the message queue

The following shows details on mailbox state packet T_RMBX.

- wtskid, rmbx_wtskid
Stores information whether a task is queued to the wait queue.
TSK_NONE: No applicable task.
Value: ID number of the task at the head of the wait queue
- pk_msg, rmbx_pk_msg
Stores information whether a message is queued to the message queue.
NULL: No applicable message.
Value: Start address of the message packet at the head of the message queue

12.5.6 Fixed-sized memory pool state packet

The following shows fixed-sized memory pool state packet T_RMPF used when issuing [ref_mpf](#).

Definition of fixed-sized memory pool state packet T_RMPF is performed by header file <rx_root>\inc78k0r\{packet.h, packet.inc}, which is called from standard header file <rx_root>\inc78k0r\{kernel.h, kernel.inc}.

[packet.h]

```
typedef struct t_rmpf {
    ID      wtskid;          /*ID number of the task at the head of the wait queue*/
    UINT    fblkcnt;         /*Number of free memory blocks*/
} T_RMPF;
```

[packet.inc]

```
rmpf_wtskid      EQU    00h    ;ID number of the task at the head of the wait queue
rmpf_fblkcnt     EQU    02h    ;Number of free memory blocks
```

The following shows details on fixed-sized memory pool state packet T_RMPF.

- wtskid, rmpf_wtskid
Stores information whether a task is queued to the wait queue.
TSK_NONE: No applicable task.
Value: ID number of the task at the head of the wait queue
- fblkcnt, rmpf_fblkcnt
Stores the number of free memory blocks.

12.5.7 Cyclic handler state packet

The following shows cyclic handler state packet T_RCYC used when issuing [ref_cyc](#).

Definition of cyclic handler state packet T_RCYC is performed by header file <rx_root>\inc78k0r\{packet.h, packet.inc}, which is called from standard header file <rx_root>\inc78k0r\{kernel.h, kernel.inc}.

[packet.h]

```
typedef struct t_rcyc {
    STAT    cycstat;      /*Cyclic handler operational state*/
    RELTIM  lefttim;      /*Time left before the next activation*/
} T_RCYC;
```

[packet.inc]

```
rcyc_cycstat    EQU    00h    ;Cyclic handler operational state
rcyc_lefttim    EQU    02h    ;Time left before the next activation
```

The following shows details on cyclic handler state packet T_RCYC.

- cycstat, rcyc_cycstat
Stores the operational state of the cyclic handler.
 TCYC_STP: Operational state
 TCYC_STA: Non-operational state
- lefttim, rcyc_lefttim
Stores the time (unit: tick) left before the next activation.
The contents of this member become an undefined value if the target cyclic handler is in the non-operational state (STP state).

12.5.8 Version information packet

The following shows version information packet T_RVER used when issuing [ref_ver](#).

Definition of version information packet T_RVER is performed by header file <rx_root>\inc78k0r\{packet.h, packet.inc}, which is called from standard header file <rx_root>\inc78k0r\{kernel.h, kernel.inc}.

[packet.h]

```
typedef struct t_rver {
    UH    maker;           /*Kernel maker's code*/
    UH    prid;            /*Identification number of the kernel*/
    UH    spver;           /*Version number of the ITRON Specification*/
    UH    prver;           /*Version number of the kernel*/
    UH    prno[4];         /*Management information of the kernel product*/
} T_RVER;
```

[packet.inc]

```
verinf_maker    EQU    00h    ;Kernel maker's code
verinf_prid     EQU    02h    ;Identification number of the kernel
verinf_spver    EQU    04h    ;Version number of the ITRON Specification
verinf_prver    EQU    06h    ;Version number of the kernel
verinf_prno     EQU    08h    ;Management information of the kernel product
```

The following shows details on version information packet T_RVER.

- maker, verinf_maker
Stores the kernel maker's code.
0x117: NEC Electronics Corporation
- prid, verinf_prid
Stores the identification number of the kernel.
0x1210: Identification number
- spver, verinf_spver
Stores the version number of the ITRON Specification.
0x5402: μ ITRON4.0 Specification Ver.4.02.00
- prver, verinf_prver
Stores the version number of the kernel.
0x4xx: Ver.4.xx
- prno[0], verinf_prno
Stores the kernel version type.
0x0: V-version
- prno[1], verinf_prno + 0x2
Stores the memory model of the kernel.
0x1: Large model
- prno[2], verinf_prno + 0x4
System-reserved area.
- prno[3], verinf_prno + 0x6
System-reserved area.

12.6 Task Management Functions

The following lists the service calls provided by the RX78K0R as the task management functions.

Table 12-8 Task Management Functions

Service Call	Function	Origin of Service Call
act_tsk	Activate task (queues an activation request).	Task, Non-task
iact_tsk	Activate task (queues an activation request).	Task, Non-task
can_act	Cancel task activation requests.	Task, Non-task
sta_tsk	Activate task (does not queue an activation request).	Task, Non-task
ista_tsk	Activate task (does not queue an activation request).	Task, Non-task
ext_tsk	Terminate invoking task.	Task
ter_tsk	Terminate task.	Task
chg_pri	Change task priority.	Task, Non-task
ichg_pri	Change task priority.	Task, Non-task
ref_tsk	Reference task state.	Task, Non-task

act_tsk iact_tsk

Outline

Activate task (queues an activation request).

C format

```
ER      act_tsk ( ID tskid );

ER      iact_tsk ( ID tskid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_act_tsk

MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_iact_tsk
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>tskid</i> ;	ID number of the task to be activated. TSK_SELF: Invoking task. Value: ID number of the task to be activated.

Explanation

These service calls move a task specified by parameter *tskid* from the DORMANT state to the READY state.

As a result, the target task is queued at the end on the ready queue corresponding to the initial priority and becomes subject to scheduling by the RX78K0R.

If the target task has been moved to a state other than the DORMANT state when this service call is issued, this service call does not move the state but increments the activation request counter (by added 0x1 to the wakeup request counter).

Note 1 The activation request counter managed by the RX78K0R is configured in 7-bit widths. If the number of activation requests exceeds the maximum count value 127 as a result of issuing this service call, the counter manipulation processing is therefore not performed but "E_QOVR" is returned.

Note 2 An extended information "[Extended information: exinf](#)" is passed to the task activated by issuing this service call.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_QOVR	-43	Queue overflow (overflow of activation request count "127").

can_act

Outline

Cancel task activation requests.

C format

```
ER_UINT can_act ( ID tskid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_can_act
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>tskid</i> ;	ID number of the task for cancelling activation requests. TSK_SELF: Invoking task. Value: ID number of the task for cancelling activation requests.

Explanation

This service call cancels all of the activation requests queued to the task specified by parameter *tskid* (sets the activation request counter to 0x0).

When this service call is terminated normally, the number of cancelled activation requests is returned.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
-	-	Normal completion (activation request count: positive value or 0).

sta_tsk ista_tsk

Outline

Activate task (does not queue an activation request).

C format

```
ER      sta_tsk ( ID tskid, VP_INT stacd );

ER      ista_tsk ( ID tskid, VP_INT stacd );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #stacd_hi
PUSH     AX
MOVW    AX, #stacd_lo
PUSH     AX
MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_sta_tsk
addw    sp, #04H

MOVW    AX, #stacd_hi
PUSH     AX
MOVW    AX, #stacd_lo
PUSH     AX
MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_ista_tsk
addw    sp, #04H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>tskid</i> ;	ID number of the task to be activated.
I	VP_INT <i>stacd</i> ;	Start code of the task.

Explanation

These service calls move a task specified by parameter *tskid* from the DORMANT state to the READY state. As a result, the target task is queued at the end on the ready queue corresponding to the initial priority and becomes subject to scheduling by the RX78K0R.

Note 1 This service call does not perform queuing of activation requests. If the target task is in a state other than the DORMANT state, the counter manipulation processing is therefore not performed but "E_OBJ" is returned.

Note 2 A start code "*stacd*" is passed to the task activated by issuing this service call.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_OBJ	-41	Object state error (specified task is not in the DORMANT state).

ext_tsk

Outline

Terminate invoking task.

C format

```
void    ext_tsk ( void );
```

Assembly format

```
BR      !!_ext_tsk
```

Parameter(s)

None.

Explanation

This service call moves an invoking task from the RUNNING state to the DORMANT state.

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and excluded from the RX78K0R scheduling subject.

If an activation request has been queued to the invoking task (the activation request counter is not set to 0x0) when this service call is issued, this service call moves the task from the RUNNING state to the DORMANT state, decrements the wakeup request counter (by subtracting 0x1 from the wakeup request counter), and then moves the task from the DORMANT state to the READY state.

Note 1 This service call does not return the OS resource that the invoking task acquired by issuing a service call such as [sig_sem](#) or [get_mpf](#). The OS resource have been acquired must therefore be returned before issuing this service call.

Note 2 When moving a task from the RUNNING state to the DORMANT state, this service call initializes the following information to values that are set during task creation.

- Priority (current priority)
- Wakeup request count
- Suspension count
- Interrupt status

Note 3 If the return instruction is written in a task, it executes the same operation as this service call.

Note 4 In the RX78K0R, code efficiency is enhanced by coding the return instruction as a "Terminate invoking task".

Return value

None.

ter_tsk

Outline

Terminate task.

C format

```
ER      ter_tsk ( ID tskid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_ter_tsk
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>tskid</i> ;	ID number of the task to be terminated.

Explanation

This service call forcibly moves a task specified by parameter *tskid* to the DORMANT state.

As a result, the target task is excluded from the RX78K0R scheduling subject.

If an activation request has been queued to the target task (the activation request counter is not set to 0x0) when this service call is issued, this service call moves the task to the DORMANT state, decrements the wakeup request counter (by subtracting 0x1 from the wakeup request counter), and then moves the task from the DORMANT state to the READY state.

Note 1 This service call does not return the OS resource that the target task acquired by issuing a service call such as [sig_sem](#) or [get_mpf](#). The OS resource have been acquired must therefore be returned before issuing this service call.

Note 2 When moving a task to the DORMANT state, this service call initializes the following information to values that are set during task creation.

- Priority (current priority)
- Wakeup request count
- Suspension count
- Interrupt status

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_OBJ	-41	Object state error (specified task is in the DORMANT state).

chg_pri ichg_pri

Outline

Change task priority.

C format

```
ER      chg_pri ( ID tskid, PRI tskpri );

ER      ichg_pri ( ID tskid, PRI tskpri );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tskpri
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_chg_pri
POP     AX

MOVW    AX, #tskpri
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_ichg_pri
POP     AX
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>tskid</i> ;	ID number of the task whose priority is to be changed. TSK_SELF: Invoking task. Value: ID number of the task whose priority is to be changed.
I	PRI <i>tskpri</i> ;	New current priority of the task. TPRI_INI: Initial priority of the task. Value: New current priority of the task.

Explanation

These service calls change the priority of the task specified by parameter *tskid* (current priority) to a value specified by parameter *tskpri*.

Note If the target task is in the RUNNING or READY state after this service call is issued, this service call re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority specified by parameter *tskpri*, following priority change processing.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_OBJ	-41	Object state error (specified task is in the DORMANT state).

ref_tsk

Outline

Reference task state.

C format

```
ER      ref_tsk ( ID tskid, T_RTSK *pk_rtsk );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #pk_rtsk_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_ref_tsk
addw    sp, #04H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>tskid</i> ;	ID number of the task to be referenced. TSK_SELF: Invoking task. Value: ID number of the task to be referenced.
O	T_RTSK <i>*pk_rtsk</i> ;	Pointer to the packet returning the task state.

Explanation

Stores task state packet (such as current status) of the task specified by parameter *tskid* in the area specified by parameter *pk_rtsk*.

Note For details about the task state packet, refer to "[12.5.1 Task state packet](#)".

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

12.7 Task Dependent Synchronization Functions

The following lists the service calls provided by the RX78K0R as the task dependent synchronization functions.

Table 12-9 Task Dependent Synchronization Functions

Service Call	Function	Origin of Service Call
slp_tsk	Put task to sleep (waiting forever).	Task
tslp_tsk	Put task to sleep (with timeout).	Task
wup_tsk	Wakeup task.	Task, Non-task
iwup_tsk	Wakeup task.	Task, Non-task
can_wup	Cancel task wakeup requests.	Task, Non-task
ican_wup	Cancel task wakeup requests.	Task, Non-task
rel_wai	Release task from waiting.	Task, Non-task
irel_wai	Release task from waiting.	Task, Non-task
sus_tsk	Suspend task.	Task, Non-task
isus_tsk	Suspend task.	Task, Non-task
rsm_tsk	Resume suspended task.	Task, Non-task
irmsm_tsk	Resume suspended task.	Task, Non-task
frsm_tsk	Forcibly resume suspended task.	Task, Non-task
ifrsn_tsk	Forcibly resume suspended task.	Task, Non-task
dly_tsk	Delay task.	Task

slp_tsk

Outline

Put task to sleep (waiting forever).

C format

```
ER      slp_tsk ( void );
```

Assembly format

```
CALL    !!_slp_tsk
```

Parameter(s)

None.

Explanation

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and excluded from the RX78K0R scheduling subject.

If a wakeup request has been queued to the target task (the wakeup request counter is not set to 0x0) when this service call is issued, this service call does not move the state but decrements the wakeup request counter (by subtracting 0x1 from the wakeup request counter).

Sleeping State Cancel Operation	Return Value
A wakeup request was issued as a result of issuing wup_tsk .	E_OK
A wakeup request was issued as a result of issuing iwup_tsk .	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_RLWAI	-49	Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai / irel_wai while waiting).

tslp_tsk

Outline

Put task to sleep (with timeout).

C format

```
ER      tslp_tsk ( TMO tmout );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tmout_lo
MOVW    BC, #tmout_hi
CALL    !!_tslp_tsk
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	TMO <i>tmout</i> ;	Specified timeout (unit: ticks). TMO_FEVR: Waiting forever. TMO_POL: Polling. Value: Specified timeout.

Explanation

This service call moves an invoking task from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (sleeping state).

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and excluded from the RX78K0R scheduling subject.

If a wakeup request has been queued to the target task (the wakeup request counter is not set to 0x0) when this service call is issued, this service call does not move the state but decrements the wakeup request counter (by subtracting 0x1 from the wakeup request counter).

The sleeping state is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Sleeping State Cancel Operation	Return Value
A wakeup request was issued as a result of issuing wup_tsk .	E_OK
A wakeup request was issued as a result of issuing iwup_tsk .	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Polling failure or timeout.	E_TMOUT

Note When TMO_FEVR is specified for wait time *tmout*, processing equivalent to [slp_tsk](#) will be executed.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_RLWAI	-49	Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai / irel_wai while waiting).
E_TMOUT	-50	Polling failure or timeout.

wup_tsk
iwup_tsk

Outline

Wakeup task.

C format

```
ER      wup_tsk ( ID tskid );

ER      iwup_tsk ( ID tskid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_wup_tsk

MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_iwup_tsk
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>tskid</i> ;	ID number of the task to be woken up. TSK_SELF: Invoking task. Value: ID number of the task to be woken up.

Explanation

These service calls cancel the WAITING state (sleeping state) of the task specified by parameter *tskid*.

As a result, the target task is moved from the sleeping state to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the SUSPENDED state.

If the target task is in a state other than the sleeping state when this service call is issued, this service call does not move the state but increments the wakeup request counter (by added 0x1 to the wakeup request counter).

Note 1 If the target task is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 The wakeup request counter managed by the RX78K0R is configured in 7-bit widths. If the number of wakeup requests exceeds the maximum count value 127 as a result of issuing this service call, the counter manipulation processing is therefore not performed but "E_QOVR" is returned.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_OBJ	-41	Object state error (specified task is in the DORMANT state).
E_QOVR	-43	Queue overflow (overflow of wakeup request count "127").

can_wup
ican_wup

Outline

Cancel task wakeup requests.

C format

```
ER_UINT can_wup ( ID tskid );

ER_UINT ican_wup ( ID tskid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_can_wup

MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_ican_wup
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>tskid</i> ;	ID number of the task for cancelling wakeup requests. TSK_SELF: Invoking task. Value: ID number of the task for cancelling wakeup requests.

Explanation

These service calls cancel all of the wakeup requests queued to the task specified by parameter *tskid* (the wakeup request counter is set to 0x0).

When this service call is terminated normally, the number of cancelled wakeup requests is returned.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OBJ	-41	Object state error (specified task is in the DORMANT state).
-	-	Normal completion (wakeup request count: positive value or 0).

rel_wai
irel_wai

Outline

Release task from waiting.

C format

```
ER      rel_wai ( ID tskid );

ER      irel_wai ( ID tskid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_rel_wai

MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_irel_wai
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>tskid</i> ;	ID number of the task to be released from waiting.

Explanation

These service calls forcibly cancel the WAITING state of the task specified by parameter *tskid*.

As a result, the target task unlinked from the wait queue and is moved from the WAITING state to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the SUSPENDED state.

"E_RLWAI" is returned from the service call that triggered the move to the WAITING state ([slp_tsk](#), [wai_sem](#), or the like) to the task whose WAITING state is cancelled by this service call.

Note 1 If the target task is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 This service call does not perform queuing of forced cancellation requests. If the target task is in a state other than the WAITING or WAITING-SUSPENDED state, "E_OBJ" is returned.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_OBJ	-41	Object state error (specified task is neither in the WAITING state nor WAITING-SUSPENDED state).

sus_tsk isus_tsk

Outline

Suspend task.

C format

```
ER      sus_tsk ( ID tskid );

ER      isus_tsk ( ID tskid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_sus_tsk

MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_isus_tsk
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>tskid</i> ;	ID number of the task to be suspended. TSK_SELF: Invoking task. Value: ID number of the task to be suspended.

Explanation

These service calls add 0x1 to the suspend request counter for the task specified by parameter *tskid*, and then move the target task from the RUNNING state to the SUSPENDED state, from the READY state to the SUSPENDED state, or from the WAITING state to the WAITING-SUSPENDED state.

If the target task has moved to the SUSPENDED or WAITING-SUSPENDED state when this service call is issued, the counter manipulation processing is not performed but only the suspend request counter increment processing is executed.

SUSPENDED State Cancel Operation	Return Value
A cancel request was issued as a result of issuing rsm_tsk .	E_OK
A cancel request was issued as a result of issuing irmsm_tsk .	E_OK
Forced release from suspended (accept frsm_tsk while suspended).	E_OK
Forced release from suspended (accept ifrsmsm_tsk while suspended).	E_OK

Note 1 If the target task is the invoking task when this service call is issued, it is unlinked from the ready queue and excluded from the RX78K0R scheduling subject.

Note 2 The suspend request counter managed by the RX78K0R is configured in 7-bit widths. If the number of suspend requests exceeds the maximum count value 127 as a result of issuing this service call, the counter manipulation processing is therefore not performed but "E_QOVR" is returned.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_OBJ	-41	Object state error (specified task is in the DORMANT state).
E_QOVR	-43	Queue overflow (overflow of suspension count "127").

rsm_tsk
irmsm_tsk

Outline

Resume suspended task.

C format

```
ER      rsm_tsk ( ID tskid );

ER      irsm_tsk ( ID tskid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_rsm_tsk

MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_irmsm_tsk
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>tskid</i> ;	ID number of the task to be resumed.

Explanation

This service call subtracts 0x1 from the suspend request counter for the task specified by parameter *tskid*, and then cancels the SUSPENDED state of the target task.

As a result, the target task is moved from the SUSPENDED state to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the WAITING state.

If a suspend request is queued (subtraction result is other than 0x0) when this service call is issued, the counter manipulation processing is not performed but only the suspend request counter decrement processing is executed.

Note 1 If the target task is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 This service call does not perform queuing of cancellation requests. If the target task is in a state other than the SUSPENDED or WAITING-SUSPENDED state, "E_OBJ" is therefore returned.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_OBJ	-41	Object state error (specified task is neither in the SUSPENDED state nor WAITING-SUSPENDED state).

frsm_tsk ifrm_tsk

Outline

Forcibly resume suspended task.

C format

```
ER      frsm_tsk ( ID tskid );

ER      ifrm_tsk ( ID tskid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_frsm_tsk

MOVW    AX, #tskid
CALL    !!_ifrm_tsk
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>tskid</i> ;	ID number of the task to be resumed.

Explanation

These service calls set the suspend request counter for the task specified by parameter *tskid* to 0x1 f, and then forcibly cancel the SUSPENDED state of the target task.

As a result, the target task is moved from the SUSPENDED state to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the WAITING state.

Note 1 If the target task is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 This service call does not perform queuing of forced cancellation requests. If the target task is in a state other than the SUSPENDED or WAITING-SUSPENDED state, "E_OBJ" is therefore returned.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_OBJ	-41	Object state error (specified task is neither in the SUSPENDED state nor WAITING-SUSPENDED state).

dly_tsk

Outline

Delay task.

C format

```
ER      dly_tsk ( RELTIM dlytim );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #dlytim_lo
MOVW    BC, #dlytim_hi
CALL    !!_dly_tsk
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	RELTIM <i>dlytim</i> ;	Amount of relative time to delay the invoking task (unit: ticks).

Explanation

This service call moves the invoking task from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (delayed state). As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and excluded from the RX78K0R scheduling subject. The delayed state is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Delayed State Cancel Operation	Return Value
Delay time specified by parameter <i>dlytim</i> has elapsed.	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_RLWAI	-49	Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai / irel_wai while waiting).

12.8 Synchronization and Communication Functions (Semaphores)

The following lists the service calls provided by the RX78K0R as the synchronization and communication functions (semaphores).

Table 12-10 Synchronization and Communication Functions (Semaphores)

Service Call	Function	Origin of Service Call
sig_sem	Release semaphore resource.	Task, Non-task
isig_sem	Release semaphore resource.	Task, Non-task
wai_sem	Acquire semaphore resource (waiting forever).	Task
pol_sem	Acquire semaphore resource (polling).	Task, Non-task
twai_sem	Acquire semaphore resource (with timeout).	Task
ref_sem	Reference semaphore state.	Task, Non-task

sig_sem isig_sem

Outline

Release semaphore resource.

C format

```
ER      sig_sem ( ID semid );

ER      isig_sem ( ID semid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #semid
CALL    !!_sig_sem

MOVW    AX, #semid
CALL    !!_isig_sem
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>semid</i> ;	ID number of the semaphore to which resource is released.

Explanation

These service calls return the resource to the semaphore specified by parameter *semid* (adds 0x1 to the semaphore counter).

If a task is queued in the wait queue of the target semaphore when this service call is issued, the counter manipulation processing is not performed but the resource is passed to the relevant task (first task of wait queue).

As a result, the relevant task is unlinked from the wait queue and is moved from the WAITING state (waiting state for a semaphore resource) to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the SUSPENDED state.

Note 1 If the first task linked in the wait queue is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 The semaphore counter managed by the RX78K0R is configured in 7-bit widths. If the number of resources exceeds the maximum count value 127 as a result of issuing this service call, the counter manipulation processing is therefore not performed but "E_QOVR" is returned.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_QOVR	-43	Queue overflow (release will exceed maximum resource count "127").

wai_sem

Outline

Acquire semaphore resource (waiting forever).

C format

```
ER      wai_sem ( ID semid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #semid
CALL    !!_wai_sem
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>semid</i> ;	ID number of the semaphore from which resource is acquired.

Explanation

This service call acquires a resource from the semaphore specified by parameter *semid* (subtracts 0x1 from the semaphore counter).

If a resource could not be acquired from the target semaphore (semaphore counter is set to 0x0) when this service call is issued, the counter manipulation processing is not performed but the invoking task is queued to the target semaphore wait queue in the order of resource acquisition request (FIFO order).

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (waiting state for a semaphore state).

Waiting State for a Semaphore State Cancel Operation	Return Value
The resource was returned to the target semaphore as a result of issuing sig_sem .	E_OK
The resource was returned to the target semaphore as a result of issuing isig_sem .	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_RLWAI	-49	Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai / irel_wai while waiting).

pol_sem

Outline

Acquire semaphore resource (polling).

C format

```
ER      pol_sem ( ID semid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #semid
CALL    !!_pol_sem
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>semid</i> ;	ID number of the semaphore from which resource is acquired.

Explanation

This service call acquires a resource from the semaphore specified by parameter *semid* (subtracts 0x1 from the semaphore counter).

If a resource could not be acquired from the target semaphore (semaphore counter is set to 0x0) when this service call is issued, the counter manipulation processing is not performed but "E_TMOUT" is returned.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_TMOUT	-50	Polling failure.

twai_sem

Outline

Acquire semaphore resource (with timeout).

C format

```
ER      twai_sem ( ID semid, TMO tmout );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tmout_hi
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #tmout_lo
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #semid
CALL    !!_twai_sem
addw    sp, #04H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>semid</i> ;	ID number of the semaphore from which resource is acquired.
I	TMO <i>tmout</i> ;	Specified timeout (unit: ticks). TMO_FEVR: Waiting forever. TMO_POL: Polling. Value: Specified timeout.

Explanation

This service call acquires a resource from the semaphore specified by parameter *semid* (subtracts 0x1 from the semaphore counter).

If a resource could not be acquired from the target semaphore (semaphore counter is set to 0x0) when this service call is issued, the counter manipulation processing is not performed but the invoking task is queued to the target semaphore wait queue in the order of resource acquisition request (FIFO order).

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (waiting state for a semaphore resource).

Waiting State for a Semaphore Resource Cancel Operation	Return Value
The resource was returned to the target semaphore as a result of issuing sig_sem .	E_OK
The resource was returned to the target semaphore as a result of issuing isig_sem .	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Polling failure or timeout.	E_TMOUT

Note When TMO_FEVR is specified for wait time *tmout*, processing equivalent to [wai_sem](#) will be executed. When TMO_POL is specified, processing equivalent to [pol_sem](#) will be executed.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_RLWAI	-49	Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai / irel_wai while waiting).
E_TMOUT	-50	Polling failure or timeout.

ref_sem

Outline

Reference semaphore state.

C format

```
ER      ref_sem ( ID semid, T_RSEM *pk_rsem );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #pk_rsem_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #semid
CALL    !!_ref_sem
addw    sp, #04H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>semid</i> ;	ID number of the semaphore to be referenced.
O	T_RSEM <i>*pk_rsem</i> ;	Pointer to the packet returning the semaphore state.

Explanation

Stores semaphore state packet (such as existence of waiting tasks) of the semaphore specified by parameter *semid* in the area specified by parameter *pk_rsem*.

Note For details about the semaphore state packet, refer to "[12.5.2 Semaphore state packet](#)".

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

12.9 Synchronization and Communication Functions (Eventflags)

The following lists the service calls provided by the RX78K0R as the synchronization and communication functions (eventflags).

Table 12-11 Synchronization and Communication Functions (Eventflags)

Service Call	Function	Origin of Service Call
set_flg	Set eventflag.	Task, Non-task
iset_flg	Set eventflag.	Task, Non-task
clr_flg	Clear eventflag.	Task, Non-task
wai_flg	Wait for eventflag (waiting forever).	Task
pol_flg	Wait for eventflag (polling).	Task, Non-task
twai_flg	Wait for eventflag (with timeout).	Task
ref_flg	Reference eventflag state.	Task, Non-task

set_flg iset_flg

Outline

Set eventflag.

C format

```
ER      set_flg ( ID flgid, FLGPTN setptn );

ER      iset_flg ( ID flgid, FLGPTN setptn );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #setptn
PUSH     AX
MOVW     AX, #flgid
CALL     !!_set_flg
POP      AX

MOVW     AX, #setptn
PUSH     AX
MOVW     AX, #flgid
CALL     !!_iset_flg
POP      AX
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>flgid</i> ;	ID number of the eventflag to be set.
I	FLGPTN <i>setptn</i> ;	Bit pattern to set (16 bits).

Explanation

These service calls set the result of ORing the bit pattern of the eventflag specified by parameter *flgid* and the bit pattern specified by parameter *setptn* as the bit pattern of the target eventflag.

If the required condition of the task queued to the target eventflag wait queue is satisfied when this service call is issued, the relevant task is unlinked from the wait queue at the same time as bit pattern setting processing.

As a result, the relevant task is moved from the WAITING state (waiting state for an eventflag) to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the SUSPENDED state.

Note 1 If the task linked in the wait queue is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 If the bit pattern set to the target eventflag is B'1100 and the bit pattern specified by parameter *setptn* is B'1010 when this service call is issued, the bit pattern of the target eventflag is set to B'1110.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

clr_flg**Outline**

Clear eventflag.

C format

```
ER      clr_flg ( ID flgid, FLGPTN clrptn );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #clrptn
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #flgid
CALL    !!_clr_flg
POP     AX
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>flgid</i> ;	ID number of the eventflag to be cleared.
I	FLGPTN <i>clrptn</i> ;	Bit pattern to clear (16 bits).

Explanation

This service call sets the result of ANDing the bit pattern set to the eventflag specified by parameter *flgid* and the bit pattern specified by parameter *clrptn* as the bit pattern of the target eventflag.

- Note 1 This service call does not perform queuing of clear requests. If the bit pattern has been cleared, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.
- Note 2 If the bit pattern set to the target eventflag is B'1100 and the bit pattern specified by parameter *clrptn* is B'1010 when this service call is issued, the bit pattern of the target eventflag is set to B'1110.
- Note 3 This service call does not cancel tasks in the waiting state for an eventflag.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

wai_flg

Outline

Wait for eventflag (waiting forever).

C format

```
ER      wai_flg ( ID flgid, FLGPTN waiptn, MODE wfmode, FLGPTN *p_flgptn );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #p_flgptn_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #wfmode
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #waiptn
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #flgid
CALL    !!_wai_flg
addw    sp, #08H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>flgid</i> ;	ID number of the eventflag wait for.
I	FLGPTN <i>waiptn</i> ;	Wait bit pattern (16 bits).
I	MODE <i>wfmode</i> ;	Wait mode. TWF_ANDW: AND waiting condition. TWF_ORW: OR waiting condition.
O	FLGPTN <i>*p_flgptn</i> ;	Bit pattern causing a task to be released from waiting.

Explanation

This service call checks whether the bit pattern specified by parameter *waiptn* and the bit pattern that satisfies the required condition specified by parameter *wfmode* are set to the eventflag specified by parameter *flgid*.

If a bit pattern that satisfies the required condition has been set for the target eventflag, the bit pattern of the target eventflag is stored in the area specified by parameter *p_flgptn*.

If the bit pattern of the target eventflag does not satisfy the required condition when this service call is issued, the invoking task is queued to the target eventflag wait queue.

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (waiting state for an eventflag).

Waiting State for an Eventflag Cancel Operation	Return Value
A bit pattern that satisfies the required condition was set to the target eventflag as a result of issuing set_flg .	E_OK
A bit pattern that satisfies the required condition was set to the target eventflag as a result of issuing iset_flg .	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI

The following shows the specification format of required condition *wfmode*.

- *wfmode* = TWF_ANDW
Checks whether all of the bits to which 1 is set by parameter *waiptn* are set as the target eventflag.
- *wfmode* = TWF_ORW
Checks which bit, among bits to which 1 is set by parameter *waiptn*, is set as the target eventflag.

Note 1 In the RX78K0R, the number of tasks that can be queued to the eventflag wait queue is one. If this service call is issued for the eventflag to which a task is queued, therefore, "E_ILUSE" is returned regardless of whether or not the required condition is immediately satisfied.

Note 2 The RX78K0R performs bit pattern clear processing (0x0 setting) when the required condition of the target eventflag (TA_CLR attribute) is satisfied.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_ILUSE	-28	Illegal service call use (there is already a task waiting for an eventflag with the TA_WSGL attribute).
E_RLWAI	-49	Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai / irel_wai while waiting).

pol_flg

Outline

Wait for eventflag (polling).

C format

```
ER      pol_flg ( ID flgid, FLGPTN waiptn, MODE wfmode, FLGPTN *p_flgptn );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #p_flgptn_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #wfmode
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #waiptn
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #flgid
CALL    !!_pol_flg
addw    sp, #08H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>flgid</i> ;	ID number of the eventflag wait for.
I	FLGPTN <i>waiptn</i> ;	Wait bit pattern (16 bits).
I	MODE <i>wfmode</i> ;	Wait mode. TWF_ANDW: AND waiting condition. TWF_ORW: OR waiting condition.
O	FLGPTN <i>*p_flgptn</i> ;	Bit pattern causing a task to be released from waiting.

Explanation

This service call checks whether the bit pattern specified by parameter *waiptn* and the bit pattern that satisfies the required condition specified by parameter *wfmode* are set to the eventflag specified by parameter *flgid*.

If the bit pattern that satisfies the required condition has been set to the target eventflag, the bit pattern of the target eventflag is stored in the area specified by parameter *p_flgptn*.

If the bit pattern of the target eventflag does not satisfy the required condition when this service call is issued, "E_TMOUT" is returned.

The following shows the specification format of required condition *wfmode*.

- *wfmode* = TWF_ANDW
Checks whether all of the bits to which 1 is set by parameter *waiptn* are set as the target eventflag.
- *wfmode* = TWF_ORW
Checks which bit, among bits to which 1 is set by parameter *waiptn*, is set as the target eventflag.

- Note 1 In the RX78K0R, the number of tasks that can be queued to the eventflag wait queue is one. If this service call is issued for the eventflag to which a task is queued, therefore, "E_ILUSE" is returned regardless of whether or not the required condition is immediately satisfied.
- Note 2 The RX78K0R performs bit pattern clear processing (0x0 setting) when the required condition of the target eventflag (TA_CLR attribute) is satisfied.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_ILUSE	-28	Illegal service call use (there is already a task waiting for an eventflag with the TA_WSGL attribute).
E_TMOUT	-50	Polling failure.

twai_flg

Outline

Wait for eventflag (with timeout).

C format

```
ER      twai_flg ( ID flgid, FLGPTN waiptn, MODE wfmode, FLGPTN *p_flgptn, TMO tmout
);
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tmout_hi
PUSH     AX
MOVW    AX, #tmout_lo
PUSH     AX
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #p_flgptn_lo
PUSH     BC
PUSH     DE
MOVW    AX, #wfmode
PUSH     AX
MOVW    AX, #waiptn
PUSH     AX
MOVW    AX, #flgid
CALL    !!_twai_flg
addw    sp, #0CH
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>flgid</i> ;	ID number of the eventflag wait for.
I	FLGPTN <i>waiptn</i> ;	Wait bit pattern (16 bits).
I	MODE <i>wfmode</i> ;	Wait mode. TWF_ANDW: AND waiting condition. TWF_ORW: OR waiting condition.
O	FLGPTN <i>*p_flgptn</i> ;	Bit pattern causing a task to be released from waiting.
I	TMO <i>tmout</i> ;	Specified timeout (unit: ticks). TMO_FEVR: Waiting forever. TMO_POL: Polling. Value: Specified timeout.

Explanation

This service call checks whether the bit pattern specified by parameter *waiptn* and the bit pattern that satisfies the required condition specified by parameter *wfmode* are set to the eventflag specified by parameter *flgid*.

If the bit pattern that satisfies the required condition has been set to the target eventflag, the bit pattern of the target eventflag is stored in the area specified by parameter *p_flgptn*.

If the bit pattern of the target eventflag does not satisfy the required condition when this service call is issued, the invoking task is queued to the target eventflag wait queue.

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (waiting state for an eventflag).

The waiting state for an eventflag is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Waiting State for an Eventflag Cancel Operation	Return Value
A bit pattern that satisfies the required condition was set to the target eventflag as a result of issuing set_flg .	E_OK
A bit pattern that satisfies the required condition was set to the target eventflag as a result of issuing iset_flg .	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Polling failure or timeout.	E_TMOUT

The following shows the specification format of required condition *wfmode*.

- *wfmode* = TWF_ANDW
Checks whether all of the bits to which 1 is set by parameter *waiptn* are set as the target eventflag.
- *wfmode* = TWF_ORW
Checks which bit, among bits to which 1 is set by parameter *waiptn*, is set as the target eventflag.

Note 1 In the RX78K0R, the number of tasks that can be queued to the eventflag wait queue is one. If this service call is issued for the eventflag to which a task is queued, therefore, "E_ILUSE" is returned regardless of whether or not the required condition is immediately satisfied.

Note 2 The RX78K0R performs bit pattern clear processing (0x0 setting) when the required condition of the target eventflag (TA_CLR attribute) is satisfied.

Note 3 When TMO_FEVR is specified for wait time *tmout*, processing equivalent to [wai_flg](#) will be executed. When TMO_POL is specified, processing equivalent to [pol_flg](#) will be executed.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_ILUSE	-28	Illegal service call use (there is already a task waiting for an eventflag with the TA_WSGL attribute).
E_RLWAI	-49	Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai / irel_wai while waiting).
E_TMOUT	-50	Polling failure or timeout.

ref_flg

Outline

Reference eventflag state.

C format

```
ER      ref_flg ( ID flgid, T_RFLG *pk_rflg );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #pk_rflg_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #flgid
CALL    !!_ref_flg
addw    sp, #04H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>flgid</i> ;	ID number of the eventflag to be referenced.
O	T_RFLG <i>*pk_rflg</i> ;	Pointer to the packet returning the eventflag state.

Explanation

Stores eventflag state packet (such as existence of waiting tasks) of the eventflag specified by parameter *flgid* in the area specified by parameter *pk_rflg*.

Note For details about the eventflag state packet, refer to "[12.5.3 Eventflag state packet](#)".

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

12.10 Synchronization and Communication Functions (Mailboxes)

The following lists the service calls provided by the RX78K0R as the synchronization and communication functions (mailboxes).

Table 12-12 Synchronization and Communication Functions (Mailboxes)

Service Call	Function	Origin of Service Call
snd_mbx	Send to mailbox.	Task, Non-task
rcv_mbx	Receive from mailbox (waiting forever).	Task
prcv_mbx	Receive from mailbox (polling).	Task, Non-task
trcv_mbx	Receive from mailbox (with timeout).	Task
ref_mbx	Reference mailbox state.	Task, Non-task

snd_mbx

Outline

Send to mailbox.

C format

```
ER      snd_mbx ( ID mbxid, T_MSG *pk_msg );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #pk_msg_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #mbxid
CALL    !!_and_mbx
addw    sp, #04H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>mbxid</i> ;	ID number of the mailbox to which the message is sent.
I	T_MSG <i>*pk_msg</i> ;	Start address of the message packet to be sent to the mailbox.

Explanation

This service call transmits the message specified by parameter *pk_msg* to the mailbox specified by parameter *mbxid* (queues the message in the wait queue).

If a task is queued to the target mailbox wait queue when this service call is issued, the message is not queued but handed over to the relevant task (first task of the wait queue).

As a result, the relevant task is unlinked from the wait queue and is moved from the WAITING state (receiving waiting for a mailbox) to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the SUSPENDED state.

- Note 1 If the first task of the wait queue is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.
- Note 2 Messages are queued to the target mailbox wait queue in the order defined by [Attribute \(queuing method\): *mbxatr*](#) during configuration (FIFO order or priority order).
- Note 3 With the RX78K0R mailbox, only the start address of the message is handed over to the receiving processing program, but the message contents are not copied to a separate area. The message contents can therefore be rewritten even after this service call is issued.
- Note 4 For details about the message packet, refer to "[12.5.4 Message packet](#)".

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

rcv_mbx

Outline

Receive from mailbox (waiting forever).

C format

```
ER      rcv_mbx ( ID mbxid, T_MSG **ppk_msg );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #ppk_msg_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #mbxid
CALL    !!_rcv_msg
addw    sp, #04H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>mbxid</i> ;	ID number of the mailbox from which a message is received.
O	T_MSG ** <i>ppk_msg</i> ;	Start address of the message packet received from the mailbox.

Explanation

This service call receives a message from the mailbox specified by parameter *mbxid*, and stores its start address in the area specified by parameter *ppk_msg*.

If the message could not be received from the target mailbox (no messages were queued in the wait queue) when this service call is issued, message reception processing is not executed but the invoking task is queued to the target mailbox wait queue in the order of message reception request (FIFO order).

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (receiving waiting state for a mailbox).

Receiving Waiting State for a mailbox Cancel Operation	Return Value
A message was transmitted to the target mailbox as a result of issuing snd_mbx .	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI

Note For details about the message packet, refer to "[12.5.4 Message packet](#)".

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_RLWAI	-49	Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai / irel_wai while waiting).

prcv_mbx

Outline

Receive from mailbox (polling).

C format

```
ER      prcv_mbx ( ID mbxid, T_MSG **ppk_msg );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #ppk_msg_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #mbxid
CALL    !!_prcv_mbx
addw    sp, #04H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>mbxid</i> ;	ID number of the mailbox from which a message is received.
O	T_MSG <i>**ppk_msg</i> ;	Start address of the message packet received from the mailbox.

Explanation

This service call receives a message from the mailbox specified by parameter *mbxid*, and stores its start address in the area specified by parameter *ppk_msg*.

If the message could not be received from the target mailbox (no messages were queued in the wait queue) when this service call is issued, message reception processing is not executed but "E_TMOUT" is returned.

Note For details about the message packet, refer to "[12.5.4 Message packet](#)".

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_TMOUT	-50	Polling failure.

trcv_mbx

Outline

Receive from mailbox (with timeout).

C format

```
ER      trcv_mbx ( ID mbxid, T_MSG **ppk_msg, TMO tmout );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tmout_hi
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #tmout_lo
PUSH    AX
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #ppk_msg_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #mbxid
CALL    !!_trcv_mbx
addw    sp, #08H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>mbxid</i> ;	ID number of the mailbox from which a message is received.
O	T_MSG <i>**ppk_msg</i> ;	Start address of the message packet received from the mailbox.
I	TMO <i>tmout</i> ;	Specified timeout (unit: ticks). TMO_FEVR: Waiting forever. TMO_POL: Polling. Value: Specified timeout.

Explanation

This service call receives a message from the mailbox specified by parameter *mbxid*, and stores its start address in the area specified by parameter *ppk_msg*.

If the message could not be received from the target mailbox (no messages were queued in the wait queue) when this service call is issued, message reception processing is not executed but the invoking task is queued to the target mailbox wait queue in the order of message reception request (FIFO order).

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (receiving waiting state for a mailbox).

The receiving waiting state for a mailbox is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Receiving Waiting State for a mailbox Cancel Operation	Return Value
A message was transmitted to the target mailbox as a result of issuing snd_mbx .	E_OK

Receiving Waiting State for a mailbox Cancel Operation	Return Value
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Polling failure or timeout.	E_TMOUT

Note 1 When TMO_FEVR is specified for wait time *tmout*, processing equivalent to [rcv_mbx](#) will be executed. When TMO_POL is specified, processing equivalent to [prcv_mbx](#) will be executed.

Note 2 For details about the message packet, refer to "[12.5.4 Message packet](#)".

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_RLWAI	-49	Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai / irel_wai while waiting).
E_TMOUT	-50	Polling failure or timeout.

ref_mbx

Outline

Reference mailbox state.

C format

```
ER      ref_mbx ( ID mbxid, T_RMBX *pk_rmbx );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #pk_rmbx_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #mbxid
CALL    !!_ref_mbx
addw    sp, #04H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>mbxid</i> ;	ID number of the mailbox to be referenced.
O	T_RMBX <i>*pk_rmbx</i> ;	Pointer to the packet returning the mailbox state.

Explanation

Stores mailbox state packet (such as existence of waiting tasks) of the mailbox specified by parameter *mbxid* in the area specified by parameter *pk_rmbx*.

Note For details about the mailbox state packet, refer to "[12.5.5 Mailbox state packet](#)".

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

12.11 Memory Pool Management Functions

The following lists the service calls provided by the RX78K0R as the memory pool management functions.

Table 12-13 Memory Pool Management Functions

Service Call	Function	Origin of Service Call
get_mpf	Acquire fixed-sized memory block (waiting forever).	Task
pget_mpf	Acquire fixed-sized memory block (polling).	Task, Non-task
tget_mpf	Acquire fixed-sized memory block (with timeout).	Task
rel_mpf	Release fixed-sized memory block.	Task, Non-task
ref_mpf	Reference fixed-sized memory pool state.	Task, Non-task

get_mpf

Outline

Acquire fixed-sized memory block (waiting forever).

C format

```
ER    get_mpf ( ID mpfid, VP *p_blk );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV    A, ES
MOV    C, A
MOVW   DE, #p_blk_lo
PUSH   BC
PUSH   DE
MOVW   AX, #mpfid
CALL   !!_get_mpf
addw   sp, #04H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>mpfid</i> ;	ID number of the fixed-sized memory pool from which a memory block is acquired.
O	VP <i>*p_blk</i> ;	Start address of the acquired memory block.

Explanation

This service call acquires the memory block from the fixed-sized memory pool specified by parameter *mpfid* and stores the start address in the area specified by parameter *p_blk*.

If a memory block could not be acquired from the target fixed-sized memory pool (no available memory blocks exist) when this service call is issued, memory block acquisition processing is not performed but the invoking task is queued to the target fixed-sized memory pool wait queue in the order of memory block acquisition request (FIFO order).

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (waiting state for a fixed-sized memory block).

The waiting state for a fixed-sized memory block is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Waiting State for a Fixed-sized Memory Block Cancel Operation	Return Value
A memory block was returned to the target fixed-sized memory pool as a result of issuing rel_mpf .	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_RLWAI	-49	Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai / irel_wai while waiting).

pget_mpf

Outline

Acquire fixed-sized memory block (polling).

C format

```
ER    pget_mpf ( ID mpfid, VP *p_blk );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV    A, ES
MOV    C, A
MOVW   DE, #p_blk_lo
PUSH   BC
PUSH   DE
MOVW   AX, #mpfid
CALL   !!_pget_mpf
addw   sp, #04H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>mpfid</i> ;	ID number of the fixed-sized memory pool from which a memory block is acquired.
O	VP <i>*p_blk</i> ;	Start address of the acquired memory block.

Explanation

This service call acquires the memory block from the fixed-sized memory pool specified by parameter *mpfid* and stores the start address in the area specified by parameter *p_blk*.

If a memory block could not be acquired from the target fixed-sized memory pool (no available memory blocks exist) when this service call is issued, memory block acquisition processing is not performed but "E_TMOUT" is returned.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_TMOUT	-50	Polling failure.

tget_mpf

Outline

Acquire fixed-sized memory block (with timeout).

C format

```
ER      tget_mpf ( ID mpfid, VP *p_blk, TMO tmout );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tmout_hi
PUSH    AX
MOVW    AX, #tmout_lo
PUSH    AX
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #p_blk_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #mpfid
CALL    !!_tget_mpf
addw    sp, #08H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>mpfid</i> ;	ID number of the fixed-sized memory pool from which a memory block is acquired.
O	VP <i>*p_blk</i> ;	Start address of the acquired memory block.
I	TMO <i>tmout</i> ;	Specified timeout (unit: ticks). TMO_FEVR: Waiting forever. TMO_POL: Polling. Value: Specified timeout.

Explanation

This service call acquires the memory block from the fixed-sized memory pool specified by parameter *mpfid* and stores the start address in the area specified by parameter *p_blk*.

If a memory block could not be acquired from the target fixed-sized memory pool (no available memory blocks exist) when this service call is issued, memory block acquisition processing is not performed but the invoking task is queued to the target fixed-sized memory pool wait queue in the order of memory block acquisition request (FIFO order).

As a result, the invoking task is unlinked from the ready queue and is moved from the RUNNING state to the WAITING state (waiting state for a fixed-sized memory block).

The waiting state for a fixed-sized memory block is cancelled in the following cases, and then moved to the READY state.

Waiting State for a Fixed-sized Memory Block Cancel Operation	Return Value
A memory block was returned to the target fixed-sized memory pool as a result of issuing rel_mpf .	E_OK
Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Forced release from waiting (accept irel_wai while waiting).	E_RLWAI
Polling failure or timeout.	E_TMOUT

Note When TMO_FEVR is specified for wait time *tmout*, processing equivalent to [get_mpf](#) will be executed. When TMO_POL is specified, processing equivalent to [pget_mpf](#) will be executed.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.
E_RLWAI	-49	Forced release from waiting (accept rel_wai / irel_wai while waiting).
E_TMOUT	-50	Polling failure or timeout.

rel_mpf

Outline

Release fixed-sized memory block.

C format

```
ER    rel_mpf ( ID mpfid, VP blk );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV    A, ES
MOV    C, A
MOVW   DE, #blk_lo
PUSH   BC
PUSH   DE
MOVW   AX, #mpfid
CALL   !!_rel_mpf
addw   sp, #04H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>mpfid</i> ;	ID number of the fixed-sized memory pool to which the memory block is released.
I	VP <i>blk</i> ;	Start address of the memory block to be released.

Explanation

This service call returns the memory block specified by parameter *blk* to the fixed-sized memory pool specified by parameter *mpfid*.

If a task is queued to the target fixed-sized memory pool wait queue when this service call is issued, memory block return processing is not performed but memory blocks are returned to the relevant task (first task of wait queue).

As a result, the relevant task is unlinked from the wait queue and is moved from the WAITING state (waiting state for a fixed-sized memory block) to the READY state, or from the WAITING-SUSPENDED state to the SUSPENDED state.

Note 1 If the first task of the wait queue is moved to the READY state after this service call is issued, this service call also re-queues the task at the end of the ready queue corresponding to the priority of the task.

Note 2 The RX78K0R does not clear the memory blocks before returning them. The contents of the returned memory blocks are therefore undefined.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

ref_mpf

Outline

Reference fixed-sized memory pool state.

C format

```
ER      ref_mpf ( ID mpfid, T_RMPF *pk_rmpf );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #pk_rmpf_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #mpfid
CALL    !!_ref_mpf
addw    sp, #04H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>mpfid</i> ;	ID number of the fixed-sized memory pool to be referenced.
O	T_RMPF <i>*pk_rmpf</i> ;	Pointer to the packet returning the fixed-sized memory pool state.

Explanation

Stores fixed-sized memory pool state packet (such as existence of waiting tasks) of the fixed-sized memory pool specified by parameter *mpfid* in the area specified by parameter *pk_rmpf*.

Note For details about the fixed-sized memory pool state packet, refer to "[12.5.6 Fixed-sized memory pool state packet](#)".

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

12.12 Time Management Functions

The following lists the service calls provided by the RX78K0R as the time management functions.

Table 12-14 Time Management Functions

Service Call	Function	Origin of Service Call
sta_cyc	Start cyclic handler operation.	Task, Non-task
stp_cyc	Stop cyclic handler operation.	Task, Non-task
ref_cyc	Reference cyclic handler state.	Task, Non-task

sta_cyc

Outline

Start cyclic handler operation.

C format

```
ER    sta_cyc ( ID cycid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #cycid
CALL    !!_sta_cyc
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>cycid</i> ;	ID number of the cyclic handler operation to be started.

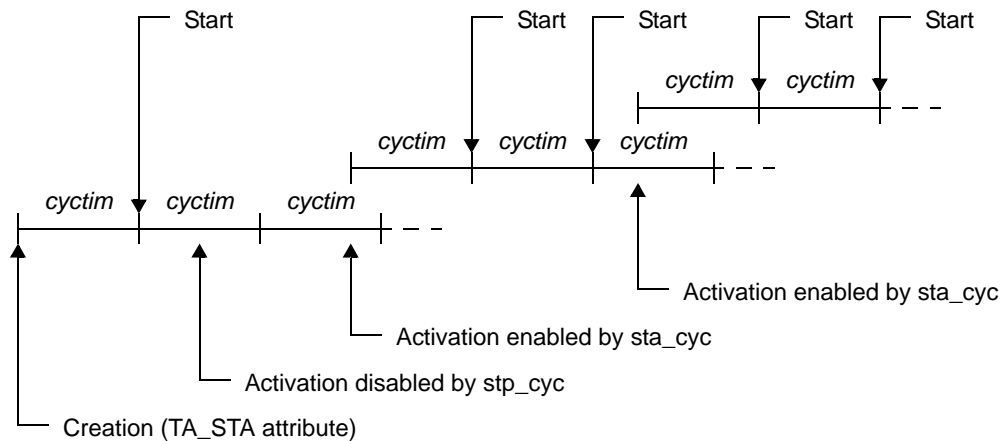
Explanation

This service call moves the cyclic handler specified by parameter *cycid* from the non-operational state (STP state) to operational state (STA state).

As a result, the target cyclic handler is handled as an activation target of the RX78K0R.

Note This service call does not perform queuing of start requests. If the target cyclic handler has been moved to the operational state (STA state), only activation cycle re-set processing is executed. The relative time interval from the output of this service call until the first activation request is output is always the activation phase (activation cycle *cyctim*) using the output of this service call as the reference point.

[Cyclic handler activation image]



Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

stp_cyc

Outline

Stop cyclic handler operation.

C format

```
ER      stp_cyc ( ID cycid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #cycid
CALL    !!_stp_cyc
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>cycid</i> ;	ID number of the cyclic handler operation to be stopped.

Explanation

This service call moves the cyclic handler specified by parameter *cycid* from the operational state (STA state) to non-operational state (STP state).

As a result, the target cyclic handler is excluded from activation targets of the RX78K0R until issuance of [sta_cyc](#).

Note This service call does not perform queuing of stop requests. If the target cyclic handler has been moved to the non-operational state (STP state), therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

ref_cyc

Outline

Reference cyclic handler state.

C format

```
ER      ref_cyc ( ID cycid, T_RCYC *pk_rcyc );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV     A, ES
MOV     C, A
MOVW    DE, #pk_rcyc_lo
PUSH    BC
PUSH    DE
MOVW    AX, #cycid
CALL    !!_ref_cyc
addw    sp, #04H
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	ID <i>cycid</i> ;	ID number of the cyclic handler to be referenced.
O	T_RCYC * <i>pk_rcyc</i> ;	Pointer to the packet returning the cyclic handler state.

Explanation

Stores cyclic handler state packet (such as current status) of the cyclic handler specified by parameter *cycid* in the area specified by parameter *pk_rcyc*.

Note For details about the cyclic handler state packet, refer to "[12.5.7 Cyclic handler state packet](#)".

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

12.13 System State Management Functions

The following lists the service calls provided by the RX78K0R as the system state management functions.

Table 12-15 System State Management Functions

Service Call	Function	Origin of Service Call
rot_rdq	Rotate task precedence.	Task, Non-task
irot_rdq	Rotate task precedence.	Task, Non-task
get_tid	Reference task ID in the RUNNING state.	Task, Non-task
iget_tid	Reference task ID in the RUNNING state.	Task, Non-task
loc_cpu	Lock the CPU.	Task, Non-task
iloc_cpu	Lock the CPU.	Task, Non-task
unl_cpu	Unlock the CPU.	Task, Non-task
iunl_cpu	Unlock the CPU.	Task, Non-task
dis_dsp	Disable dispatching.	Task
ena_dsp	Enable dispatching.	Task
sns_ctx	Reference contexts.	Task, Non-task
sns_loc	Reference CPU state.	Task, Non-task
sns_dsp	Reference dispatching state.	Task, Non-task
sns_dpn	Reference dispatch pending state.	Task, Non-task

rot_rdq
irotd_rdq

Outline

Rotate task precedence.

C format

```
ER      rot_rdq ( PRI tskpri );

ER      irot_rdq ( PRI tskpri );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #tskpri
CALL    !!_rot_rdq

MOVW    AX, #tskpri
CALL    !!_irot_rdq
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
I	PRI <i>tskpri</i> ;	Priority of the tasks whose precedence is rotated. TPRI_SELF: Current priority of the invoking task. Value: Priority of the tasks whose precedence is rotated.

Explanation

This service call re-queues the first task of the ready queue corresponding to the priority specified by parameter *tskpri* to the end of the queue to change the task execution order explicitly.

- Note 1 This service call does not perform queuing of rotation requests. If no task is queued to the ready queue corresponding to the relevant priority, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.
- Note 2 Round-robin scheduling can be implemented by issuing this service call via a cyclic handler in a constant cycle.
- Note 3 The ready queue is a hash table that uses priority as the key, and tasks that have entered an executable state (READY state or RUNNING state) are queued in FIFO order.
 Therefore, the scheduler realizes the RX78K0R's [Scheduling System](#) by executing task detection processing from the highest priority level of the ready queue upon activation, and upon detection of queued tasks, giving the CPU use right to the first task of the proper priority level.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

get_tid iget_tid

Outline

Reference task ID in the RUNNING state.

C format

```
ER      get_tid ( ID *p_tskid );

ER      iget_tid ( ID *p_tskid );
```

Assembly format

```
MOVW    AX, #p_tskid_lo
MOVW    BC, #p_tskid_hi
CALL    !!_get_tid

MOVW    AX, #p_tskid_lo
MOVW    BC, #p_tskid_hi
CALL    !!_iget_tid
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
O	ID <i>*p_tskid;</i>	ID number of the task in the RUNNING state.

Explanation

These service calls store the ID of a task in the RUNNING state in the area specified by parameter *p_tskid*.

Note This service call stores TSK_NONE in the area specified by parameter *p_tskid* if no tasks that have entered the RUNNING state exist (all tasks in the IDLE state).

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

loc_cpu
iloc_cpu

Outline

Lock the CPU.

C format

```
ER      loc_cpu ( void );

ER      iloc_cpu ( void );
```

Assembly format

```
CALL    !!_loc_cpu

CALL    !!_iloc_cpu
```

Parameter(s)

None.

Explanation

These service calls change the system status type to the CPU locked state.

As a result, maskable interrupt acknowledgment processing is prohibited during the interval from this service call is issued until [unl_cpu](#) or [iunl_cpu](#) is issued, and service call issuance is also restricted.

If a maskable interrupt is created during this period, the RX78K0R delays transition to the relevant interrupt processing (interrupt handler) until either [unl_cpu](#) or [iunl_cpu](#) is issued.

The service calls that can be issued in the CPU locked state are limited to the one listed below.

Service Call	Function
loc_cpu , iloc_cpu	Lock the CPU.
unl_cpu , iunl_cpu	Unlock the CPU.
sns_ctx	Reference contexts.
sns_loc	Reference CPU state.
sns_dsp	Reference dispatching state.
sns_dpn	Reference dispatch pending state.

Note 1 The CPU locked state changed by issuing this service call must be cancelled before the processing program that issued this service call ends.

Note 2 This service call does not perform queuing of lock requests. If the system is in the CPU locked state, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

Note 3 The RX78K0R implements disabling of maskable interrupt acknowledgment by manipulating the interrupt mask flag register (MKxx) and the in-service priority flag (ISPx) of the program status word (PSW). Therefore, manipulating of these registers from the processing program is prohibited from when this service call is issued until [unl_cpu](#) or [iunl_cpu](#) is issued.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

unl_cpu
iunl_cpu

Outline

Unlock the CPU.

C format

```
ER      unl_cpu ( void );

ER      iunl_cpu ( void );
```

Assembly format

```
CALL    !!_unl_cpu

CALL    !!_iunl_cpu
```

Parameter(s)

None.

Explanation

These service calls change the system status to the CPU unlocked state.

As a result, acknowledge processing of maskable interrupts prohibited through issuance of either [loc_cpu](#) or [iloc_cpu](#) is enabled, and the restriction on service call issuance is released.

If a maskable interrupt is created during the interval from when either [loc_cpu](#) or [iloc_cpu](#) is issued until this service call is issued, the RX78K0R delays transition to the relevant interrupt processing (interrupt handler) until this service call is issued.

Note 1 This service call does not perform queuing of cancellation requests. If the system is in the CPU unlocked state, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

Note 2 RThe RX78K0R implements enabling of maskable interrupt acknowledgment by manipulating the interrupt mask flag register (MKxx) and the in-service priority flag (ISPx) of the program status word (PSW). Therefore, manipulating of these registers from the processing program is prohibited from when [loc_cpu](#) or [iloc_cpu](#) is issued until this service call is issued.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

dis_dsp

Outline

Disable dispatching.

C format

```
ER    dis_dsp ( void );
```

Assembly format

```
CALL    !!_dis_dsp
```

Parameter(s)

None.

Explanation

This service call changes the system status to the dispatching disabled state.

As a result, dispatch processing (task scheduling) is disabled from when this service call is issued until [ena_dsp](#) is issued.

If a service call ([chg_pri](#), [sig_sem](#), etc.) accompanying dispatch processing is issued during the interval from when this service call is issued until [ena_dsp](#) is issued, the RX78K0R executes only processing such as queue manipulation, counter manipulation, etc., and the actual dispatch processing is delayed until [ena_dsp](#) is issued, upon which the actual dispatch processing is performed in batch.

Note 1 This service call does not perform queuing of disable requests. If the system is in the dispatching disabled state, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

Note 2 The dispatching disabled state changed by issuing this service call must be cancelled before the task that issued this service call moves to the DORMANT state.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

ena_dsp

Outline

Enable dispatching.

C format

```
ER    ena_dsp ( void );
```

Assembly format

```
CALL    !!_ena_dsp
```

Parameter(s)

None.

Explanation

This service call changes the system status to the dispatching enabled state.

As a result, dispatch processing (task scheduling) that has been disabled by issuing [dis_dsp](#) is enabled.

If a service call ([chg_pri](#), [sig_sem](#), etc.) accompanying dispatch processing is issued during the interval from when [dis_dsp](#) is issued until this service call is issued, the RX78K0R executes only processing such as queue manipulation, counter manipulation, etc., and the actual dispatch processing is delayed until this service call is issued, upon which the actual dispatch processing is performed in batch.

Note This service call does not perform queuing of enable requests. If the system is in the dispatching enabled state, therefore, no processing is performed but it is not handled as an error.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

sns_ctx

Outline

Reference contexts.

C format

```
BOOL    sns_ctx ( void );
```

Assembly format

```
CALL    !!_sns_ctx
```

Parameter(s)

None.

Explanation

This service call acquires the context type of the processing program that issued this service call (non-task context or task context).

When this service call is terminated normally, the acquired context type (TRUE: non-task context, FALSE: task context) is returned.

Non-task contexts: cyclic handler, interrupt handler
Task contexts: task

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
TRUE	1	Normal completion (Non-task contexts).
FALSE	0	Normal completion (Task contexts).

sns_loc

Outline

Reference CPU state.

C format

```
BOOL    sns_loc ( void );
```

Assembly format

```
CALL    !!_sns_loc
```

Parameter(s)

None.

Explanation

This service call acquires the system status type when this service call is issued (CPU locked state or CPU unlocked state).

When this service call is terminated normally, the acquired system state type (TRUE: CPU locked state, FALSE: CPU unlocked state) is returned.

Note The system enters the CPU locked state when [loc_cpu](#) or [iloc_cpu](#) is issued, and enters the CPU unlocked state when [unl_cpu](#) or [iunl_cpu](#) is issued.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
TRUE	1	Normal completion (CPU locked state).
FALSE	0	Normal completion (CPU unlocked state).

sns_dsp

Outline

Reference dispatching state.

C format

```
BOOL      sns_dsp ( void );
```

Assembly format

```
CALL      !!_sns_dsp
```

Parameter(s)

None.

Explanation

This service call acquires the system status type when this service call is issued (dispatching disabled state or dispatching enabled state).

When this service call is terminated normally, the acquired system state type (TRUE: dispatching disabled state, FALSE: dispatching enabled state) is returned.

Note The system enters the dispatching disabled state when [dis_dsp](#) is issued, and enters the dispatching enabled state when [ena_dsp](#) is issued.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
TRUE	1	Normal completion (dispatching disabled state).
FALSE	0	Normal completion (dispatching enabled state).

sns_dpn

Outline

Reference dispatch pending state.

C format

```
BOOL    sns_dpn ( void );
```

Assembly format

```
CALL    !!_sns_dpn
```

Parameter(s)

None.

Explanation

This service call acquires the system status type when this service call is issued (whether in dispatch pending state or not).

When this service call is terminated normally, the acquired system state type (TRUE: dispatch pending state, FALSE: dispatch not-pending state) is returned.

Note The dispatch pending state designates the state in which explicit execution of dispatch processing (task scheduling processing) is prohibited by issuing either the [dis_dsp](#), [loc_cpu](#), or [iloc_cpu](#) service call, as well as the state during which processing of a non-task is being executed.

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
TRUE	1	Normal completion (dispatch pending state).
FALSE	0	Normal completion (other state).

12.14 System Configuration Management Functions

The following lists the service calls provided by the RX78K0R as the system configuration management functions.

Table 12-16 System Configuration Management Functions

Service Call	Function	Origin of Service Call
ref_ver	Reference version information.	Task, Non-task

ref_ver

Outline

Reference version information.

C format

```
ER    ref_ver ( T_RVER *pk_rver );
```

Assembly format

```
MOV    A, ES
MOV    C, A
MOVW   AX, #pk_rver_lo
CALL   !!_ref_ver
```

Parameter(s)

I/O	Parameter	Description
O	T_RVER *pk_rver;	Pointer to the packet returning the version information.

Explanation

The service call stores version information packet (such as kernel maker's code) to the area specified by parameter *pk_rver*.

Note For details about the version information packet, refer to "[12.5.8 Version information packet](#)".

Return value

Macro	Value	Description
E_OK	0	Normal completion.

CHAPTER 13 SYSTEM CONFIGURATION FILE

This chapter explains the coding method of the system configuration file required to output information files (system information table file and system information header file) that contain data to be provided for the RX78K0R.

13.1 Notation Method

The following shows the notation method of system configuration files.

- Character code

Create the system configuration file using ASCII code.

The CF78K0R distinguishes lower cases "a to z" and upper cases "A to Z".

Note For Japanese language coding, Shift-JIS codes can be used only for comments.

- Comment

In a system configuration file, parts between `/*` and `*/` and parts from two successive slashes `//` to the line end are regarded as comments.

- Numeric

In a system configuration file, words starting with a numeric value (0 to 9) are regarded as numeric values.

The CF78K0R distinguishes numeric values as follows.

Octal: Words starting with 0

Decimal: Words starting with a value other than 0

Hexadecimal: Words starting with 0x or 0X

Note Elements of a word are limited to numeric values 0 to 9.

- Object name

In a system configuration file, words starting with a letter of "a to z, A to Z", or underscore "_", within 24 characters, are regarded as object names.

Note Elements of a word are limited to alphanumeric characters "a to z, A to Z, 0 to 9", and underscore "_".

- Symbol name

In a system configuration file, words starting with a letter of "a to z, A to Z", or underscore "_", within 30 characters, are regarded as symbol names.

Note 1 Elements of a word are limited to alphanumeric characters "a to z, A to Z, 0 to 9", and underscore "_".

Note 2 The CF78K0R distinguishes the object name and symbol name according to the context in the system configuration file.

- Keywords

The words shown below are reserved by the CF78K0R as keywords.

Using these words for any other purpose specified is therefore prohibited.

CRE_CYC, CRE_FLG, CRE_MBX, CRE_MPF, CRE_SEM, CRE_TSK, MAX_PRI, null, NULL, p0area, p1area, p2area, p3area, stkarea, sysarea, SYS_STK, TA_ACT, TA_ASM, TA_CLR, TA_DISINT, TA_ENAINT, TA_HLNG, TA_MFIFO, TA_MPRI, TA_PHS, TA_RSTR, TA_STA, TA_TFIFO, TA_TPRI, TA_WMUL, TA_WSGL

Note The CF78K0R does not call C preprocessors. Coding of preprocessing directives (`#include`, `#define`, `#if`, or the like) in the system configuration file is therefore prohibited.

13.2 Configuration Information

The configuration information that is described in a system configuration file is divided into the following two main types.

- [System Information](#)

This information consists of fundamental data required for the RX78K0R operation.

- [System stack information](#)
- [Task priority information](#)

- [Static API Information](#)

This information consists of data for management objects required to implement the functions provided by the RX78K0R.

- [Task information](#)
- [Semaphore information](#)
- [Eventflag information](#)
- [Mailbox information](#)
- [Fixed-sized memory pool information](#)
- [Cyclic handler information](#)

13.2.1 Cautions

In the system configuration file, describe the system configuration information ([System Information](#), [Static API Information](#)) in the following order.

- 1) [System Information](#) description
- 2) [Static API Information](#) description

[Figure 13-1](#) illustrates how the system configuration file is described.

Figure 13-1 System Configuration File Description Format

```
-- System Information (System stack information, etc.) description
/* ..... */

-- Static API Information(Task information, etc.) description
/* ..... */
```

Note Up to 40,000 lines and up to 1,000 characters per line can be written in a system configuration file.

13.3 System Information

The following describes the format that must be observed when describing the system information in the system configuration file.

The GOTHIC-FONT characters in following descriptions are the reserved words, and italic face characters are the portion that the user must write the relevant numeric value.

Items enclosed by square brackets "[]" can be omitted.

13.3.1 System stack information

Define the following item as system stack information:

- 1) Stack size: *sys_stksz*

Only one information item can be defined as stack information.

The following shows the system stack information format.

```
SYS_STK ( sys_stksz );
```

The items constituting the system stack information are as follows.

- 1) Stack size: *sys_stksz*

Specifies the system stack size (in bytes).

A value between 0 and 65534, aligned to a 2-byte boundary, can be specified for *sys_stksz*.

Note 1 The system stack is allocated to the stkarea segment.

Note 2 For details about the estimation of the system stack size, refer to See "[13.5.1 System stack size](#)".

13.3.2 Task priority information

Define the following items as task priority information:

- 1) Priority range: *maxtpri*

The number of task priority information items that can be specified is defined as being within the range of 0 to 1. The following shows the task priority information format.

```
[MAX_PRI ( maxtpri );]
```

The items constituting the task priority information are as follows.

- 1) Priority range: *maxtpri*

Specifies the priority range of a task (maximum value of Initial priority: *itskpri*, or maximum value of priority specified when issuing *chg_pri*).

A value between 1 and 15 can be specified for *maxtpri*.

Note If definition of this information is omitted, the task priority range is set to "15".

13.4 Static API Information

The following describes the format that must be observed when describing the static API information in the system configuration file.

The GOTHIC-FONT characters in following descriptions are the reserved words, and italic face characters are the portion that the user must write the relevant numeric value, symbol name, or keyword.

Items enclosed by square brackets "[]" can be omitted.

13.4.1 Task information

Define the following items as task information:

- 1) Task name: *tskid*
- 2) Attribute (coding language, initial activation status, initial interrupt status): *tskatr*
- 3) Extended information: *exinf*
- 4) Start address: *task*
- 5) Initial priority: *itskpri*
- 6) Stack size: *stksz*
- 7) System-reserved area: *stk*

The number of task information items that can be specified is defined as being within the range of 1 to 127.
The following shows the task information format.

```
CRE_TSK ( tskid, { tskatr, exinf, task, itskpri, stksz, stk } );
```

The items constituting the task information are as follows.

- 1) Task name: *tskid*

Specifies the task name.

An object name can be specified for *tskid*.

Note The CF78K0R outputs to the system information header file the correspondence between the task names and IDs, in the following format. Consequently, task names can be used in the place of IDs by including the relevant system information header file using the processing program.

[Output format to system information header file (for C)]

```
#define tskid ID
```

[Output format to system information header file (for assembly language)]

```
tskid equ ID
```

- 2) Attribute (coding language, initial activation status, initial interrupt status): *tskatr*

Specifies the attributes (coding language, initial activation status, initial interrupt status) of the task.

The keywords that can be specified for *tskatr* are TA_HLNG, TA_ASM, TA_ACT, TA_ENAINT and TA_DISINT.

[Coding language]

TA_HLNG: Start a processing unit through a C language interface.

TA_ASM: Start a processing unit through an assembly language interface.

[Initial activation status]

TA_ACT: Task is activated after the creation.

[Initial interrupt status]

TA_ENAINT: Enables acknowledgment of maskable interrupts.

TA_DISINT: Disables acknowledgment of maskable interrupts.

Note 1 If specification of TA_ACT is omitted, the initial task activation status is set to the "DORMANT state".

Note 2 If specification of TA_ENAINT and TA_DISINT is omitted, the initial task interrupt status is set to "interrupts acknowledgment enabled".

3) Extended information: *exinf*

Specifies the extended information of the task.

Values that can be specified for *exinf* are from 0 to 1048575, or symbol names written in C.

Note *exinf* is passed as an extended information to the target task when the task is activated by [act_tsk](#) or [iact_tsk](#). The target task can therefore handle *exinf* in the same manner as handling function parameters.

4) Start address: *task*

Specifies the start address of the task.

Values that can be specified for *task* are symbol names written in C.

Note 1 When a task is written in C as shown below, the value specified by this item is "func_task".

```
#pragma      rtos_task      func_task

#include      <kernel.h>
#include      <kernel_id.h>

void
func_task ( VP_INT exinf )
{
    /* ..... */

    ext_tsk ( );
}
```

Note 2 When a task is written in assembly language as shown below, the value specified by this item is "func_task".

```
$INCLUDE      (kernel.inc)
$INCLUDE      (kernel_id.inc)

PUBLIC _func_task
CSEG
_func_task:
    PUSH      BC
    PUSH      AX

    ; .....

    BR        !!_ext_tsk
END
```

5) Initial priority: *itskpri*

Specifies the initial priority of the task.

Values that can be specified for *itskpri* are limited to "1 to [Priority range: maxtpri](#)".

6) Stack size: *stksz*

Specifies the stack size (in bytes) of the task.

A value between 0 and 65534, aligned to a 2-byte boundary, can be specified for *stksz*.

Note 1 The task stack is allocated to the *stkarea* segment.

Note 2 For details about the estimation of the stack size of the task, refer to See “[13.5.2 Stack size of the task](#)”.

7) System-reserved area: *stk*

System-reserved area.

Values that can be specified for *stk* are limited to NULL characters.

13.4.2 Semaphore information

Define the following items as semaphore information:

- 1) Semaphore name: *semid*
- 2) Attribute (queuing method): *sematr*
- 3) Initial resource count: *isemcnt*
- 4) System-reserved area: *maxsem*

The number of semaphore information items that can be specified is defined as being within the range of 0 to 127. The following shows the semaphore information format.

```
CRE_SEM ( semid, { sematr, isemcnt, maxsem } );
```

The items constituting the semaphore information are as follows.

- 1) Semaphore name: *semid*

Specifies the semaphore name.

An object name can be specified for *semid*.

Note The CF78K0R outputs to the system information header file the correspondence between the semaphore names and IDs, in the following format. Consequently, semaphore names can be used in the place of IDs by including the relevant system information header file using the processing program.

[Output format to system information header file (for C)]

```
#define semid ID
```

[Output format to system information header file (for assembly language)]

```
semid equ ID
```

- 2) Attribute (queuing method): *sematr*

Specifies the attribute (queuing method) of the semaphore.

The keywords that can be specified for *sematr* are TA_TFIFO.

[Queuing method]

TA_TFIFO: Task wait queue is in FIFO order.

- 3) Initial resource count: *isemcnt*

Specifies the initial resource count of the semaphore.

A value between 0 and 127 can be specified for *isemcnt*.

- 4) System-reserved area: *maxsem*

System-reserved area.

Values that can be specified for *maxsem* are limited to 127.

13.4.3 Eventflag information

Define the following items as eventflag information:

- 1) Eventflag name: *flgid*
- 2) Attribute (queuing method, queuing count, bit pattern clear): *flgatr*
- 3) System-reserved area: *iflgptn*

The number of eventflag information items that can be specified is defined as being within the range of 0 to 127.
The following shows the eventflag information format.

```
CRE_FLG ( flgid, { flgatr, iflgptn } );
```

The items constituting the eventflag information are as follows.

- 1) Eventflag name: *flgid*

Specifies the eventflag name.

An object name can be specified for *flgid*.

Note The CF78K0R outputs to the system information header file the correspondence between the eventflag names and IDs, in the following format. Consequently, eventflag names can be used in the place of IDs by including the relevant system information header file using the processing program.

[Output format to system information header file (for C)]

```
#define flgid ID
```

[Output format to system information header file (for assembly language)]

```
flgid equ ID
```

- 2) Attribute (queuing method, queuing count, bit pattern clear): *flgatr*

Specifies the attributes (queuing method, queuing count, clear) of the eventflag.

The keywords that can be specified for *flgatr* are TA_TFIFO, TA_WSGL and TA_CLR.

[Queuing method]

TA_TFIFO: Task wait queue is in FIFO order.

[Queuing count]

TA_WSGL: Only one task is allowed to be in the waiting state for the eventflag.

[Bit pattern clear]

TA_CLR: Bit pattern is cleared when a task is released from the waiting state for that eventflag.

Note If specification of TA_CLR is omitted, "not clear bit patterns if the required condition is satisfied" is set.

- 3) System-reserved area: *iflgptn*

System-reserved area.

Values that can be specified for *iflgptn* are limited to 0.

13.4.4 Mailbox information

Define the following items as mailbox information:

- 1) Mailbox name: *mbxid*
- 2) Attribute (queuing method): *mbxatr*
- 3) System-reserved area: *maxmpri*
- 4) System-reserved area: *mprihd*

The number of mailbox information items that can be specified is defined as being within the range of 0 to 127.
The following shows the mailbox information format.

```
CRE_MBX ( mbxid, { mbxatr, maxmpri, mprihd } );
```

The items constituting the mailbox information are as follows.

- 1) Mailbox name: *mbxid*

Specifies the mailbox name.

An object name can be specified for *mbxid*.

Note The CF78K0R outputs to the system information header file the correspondence between the mailbox names and IDs, in the following format. Consequently, mailbox names can be used in the place of IDs by including the relevant system information header file using the processing program.

[Output format to system information header file (for C)]

```
#define mbxid ID
```

[Output format to system information header file (for assembly language)]

```
mbxid equ ID
```

- 2) Attribute (queuing method): *mbxatr*

Specifies the attributes (task queuing method, message queuing method) of the mailbox.

The keywords that can be specified for *mbxatr* are TA_TFIFO, TA_MFIFO and TA_MPRI.

[Task queuing method]

TA_TFIFO: Task wait queue is in FIFO order.

[Message queuing method]

TA_MFIFO: Message queue is in FIFO order.

TA_MPRI: Message queue is in message priority order.

- 3) System-reserved area: *maxmpri*

System-reserved area.

Values that can be specified for *maxmpri* are limited to 0.

- 4) System-reserved area: *mprihd*

System-reserved area.

The keywords that can be specified for *mprihd* are NULL.

13.4.5 Fixed-sized memory pool information

Define the following items as fixed-sized memory pool information:

- 1) Fixed-sized memory pool name: *mpfid*
- 2) Attribute (queuing method): *mpfatr*
- 3) Total number of memory blocks: *blkcnt*
- 4) Memory block size: *blksz*
- 5) Segment name: *seg_nam*
- 6) System-reserved area: *mpf*

The number of fixed-sized memory pool information items that can be specified is defined as being within the range of 0 to 127.

The following shows the fixed-sized memory pool information format.

```
CRE_MPF ( mpfid, { mpfatr, blkcnt, blksz[:seg_nam], mpf } );
```

The items constituting the fixed-sized memory pool information are as follows.

- 1) Fixed-sized memory pool name: *mpfid*
Specifies the fixed-sized memory pool name.
An object name can be specified for *mpfid*.

Note The CF78K0R outputs to the system information header file the correspondence between the fixed-sized memory pool names and IDs, in the following format. Consequently, fixed-sized memory pool names can be used in the place of IDs by including the relevant system information header file using the processing program.

[Output format to system information header file (for C)]

```
#define mpfid ID
```

[Output format to system information header file (for assembly language)]

```
mpfid equ ID
```

- 2) Attribute (queuing method): *mpfatr*
Specifies the attribute (queuing method) of the fixed-sized memory pool.
The keywords that can be specified for *mpfatr* are TA_TFIFO.

[Queuing method]

TA_TFIFO: Task wait queue is in FIFO order.

- 3) Total number of memory blocks: *blkcnt*
Specifies the total number of memory blocks.
A value between 1 and 16383 can be specified for *blkcnt*.

- 4) Memory block size: *blksz*
Specifies the memory block size (in bytes).
A value between 4 and 65534, aligned to a 2-byte boundary, can be specified for *blksz*.

5) Segment name: *seg_nam*

Specifies where the fixed-sized memory pool is to be allocated.

Values that can be specified for *seg_nam* are limited to p0area, p1area, p2area, or p3area.

[Fixed-sized memory pool allocation segment]

p0area: Allocates the fixed-sized memory pool to the p0area segment.

p1area: Allocates the fixed-sized memory pool to the p1area segment.

p2area: Allocates the fixed-sized memory pool to the p2area segment.

p3area: Allocates the fixed-sized memory pool to the p3area segment.

Note If specification of *seg_nam* is omitted, the fixed-sized memory pool is allocated to the p0area segment.

6) System-reserved area: *mpf*

System-reserved area.

Values that can be specified for *mpf* are limited to NULL characters.

13.4.6 Cyclic handler information

Define the following items as cyclic handler information:

- 1) Cyclic handler name: *cycid*
- 2) Attribute (coding language, initial activation status): *cycatr*
- 3) System-reserved area: *exinf*
- 4) Start address: *cychdr*
- 5) Activation cycle: *cyctim*
- 6) System-reserved area: *cycphs*

The number of cyclic handler information items that can be specified is defined as being within the range of 0 to 127. The following shows the cyclic handler information format.

```
CRE_CYC ( cycid, { cycatr, exinf, cychdr, cyctim, cycphs } );
```

The items constituting the cyclic handler information are as follows.

- 1) Cyclic handler name: *cycid*

Specifies the cyclic handler name.

An object name can be specified for *cycid*.

Note The CF78K0R outputs to the system information header file the correspondence between the cyclic handler names and IDs, in the following format. Consequently, cyclic handler names can be used in the place of IDs by including the relevant system information header file using the processing program.

[Output format to system information header file (for C)]

```
#define cycid ID
```

[Output format to system information header file (for assembly language)]

```
cycid equ ID
```

- 2) Attribute (coding language, initial activation status): *cycatr*

Specifies the attributes (coding language, initial activation status) of the cyclic handler.

The keywords that can be specified for *cycatr* are TA_HLNG, TA_ASM and TA_STA.

[Coding language]

TA_HLNG: Start a processing unit through a C language interface.

TA_ASM: Start a processing unit through an assembly language interface.

[Initial operation status]

TA_STA: Cyclic handler is in an operational state after the creation.

Note If specification of TA_STA is omitted, the cyclic handler initial activation status is set to "non-operational state (STP state)".

- 3) System-reserved area: *exinf*

System-reserved area.

Values that can be specified for *exinf* are limited to 0.

4) Start address: *cychdr*

Specifies the start address of the cyclic handler.

Values that can be specified for *cychdr* are symbol names written in C.

Note 1 When the cyclic handler is written in C as shown below, the value specified by this item is "func_cychdr".

```
#include <kernel.h>
#include <kernel_id.h>

void
func_cychdr ( void )
{
    /* ..... */

    return;
}
```

Note 2 When the cyclic handler is written in assembly language as shown below, the value specified by this item is "func_cychdr".

```
$INCLUDE (kernel.inc)
$INCLUDE (kernel_id.inc)

PUBLIC _func_cychdr
CSEG
_func_cychdr:
    ; .....

    RET
END
```

5) Activation cycle: *cyctim*

Specifies the activation cycle (unit: ticks) of the cyclic handler.

A value between 1 and 4294967295 can be specified for *cyctim*.

6) System-reserved area: *cycphs*

System-reserved area.

Values that can be specified for *cycphs* are limited to 0.

13.5 Stack Size Estimation

13.5.1 System stack size

The formula for calculating the system stack size is shown below.

[Expression 1: System stack size]

$\text{sys_stk} = \text{MAX}(\text{sys_stkA}, \text{sys_stkB}, \text{sys_stkC}) + 2 \text{ (bytes)}$

[Expression 2: System stack size use pattern A]

$\text{sys_stkA} = \text{tsksvc} + \text{int0} + \text{int1} + \text{int2} + \text{int3}$

[Expression 3: System stack size use pattern B]

$\text{sys_stkB} = \text{Size used by user in idle routine}$

[Expression 4: System stack size use pattern C]

$\text{sys_stkC} = \text{Size used by user in initialization routine}$

[Expression 5: Maximum size of system stack used during service call executed by task]

Maximum size of system stack used during service call executed by task

[Expression 6: Size of int0, int1]

$\text{Intx} = \text{Maximum size of interrupts used by stack in interrupts of level x}$
 $= \text{Size used by user in interrupts}$

[Expression 7: Size of int2, int2]

$\text{intx} = \text{Maximum size of interrupts used by stack in interrupts of level x}$
 $= \text{Size used by user in interrupts} + \text{allsvc} + 16$

[Expression 8: Total size used by system calls used in interrupt]

$\text{allsvc} = \text{For service call arguments} + \text{For internal processing by program issued the service call} + \text{For system stack internal processing}$

Specify the system stack size in the system configuration file. Note, however, that the size that is actually secured is the value specified in the configurator + 2 bytes. Consequently, the value that is actually specified in the system configuration file is the `sys_stk` value calculated in expression 1 minus 2 bytes.

We recommend specifying a system stack size higher than the estimate in order to reduce the danger of a stack overflow.

The example is shown below.

[Conditions]

- Execute a `pol_flg` service call from task "task1".
- Execute a `snd_mbx` service call from task "task2".
- Interrupt `int0` is a level-0 interrupt process not managed by the OS. The stack is not used in the interrupt.
- Interrupt `int2` is a level-2 OS interrupt handler. Execute the `snd_mbx` service call, and use 12 bytes of stack in the interrupt.
- Interrupt `int3A` is a level-3 OS interrupt handler. Execute the `pol_flg` service call, and use 16 bytes of stack in the interrupt.
- Interrupt `int3B` is a level-3 OS interrupt handler. Execute `Timer_Handler`, the stack is not used in the interrupt.
- Idle "idl" does not use the stack.
- The initialization routine "ini" uses 24 bytes of stack in the routine.

[Expression]

```

tsksvc  = MAX(size of system stack used by pol_flg, size of system stack used by snd_mbx)
        = MAX(6,4) = 6 bytes

int0 = 0 + 0 = 0 byte
int1 = undefined = 0 byte
int2 = 12 + ( 4 + 8 + 4 ) + 16 = 44 bytes
int3 = MAX(int3A, int3B) = MAX(54,20) = 54 bytes
int3A = 16 + ( 8 + 8 + 6 ) + 16 = 54 bytes
int3B = 0 + ( 0 + 0 + 6 ) + 16 = 20 bytes

sys_stkA  = tsksvc + int0 + int1 + int2 + int3
          = 6 + 0 + 0 + 44 + 54
          = 104 bytes Note: This is the max in sys_stkA/B/C, so after this size or greater is secured.

sys_stkB  = Stack size used by user in idle routine = 0 byte
sys_stkC  = Stack size used by user in initialization routine = 20 bytes

sys_stk   = MAX(sys_stkA, sys_stkB, sys_stkC) + 2
          = MAX(104, 0, 20)
          = 104 + 2 = 106 bytes

```

The system stack size will be the 104 bytes of sys_stkA.
The size specified in the system configuration file will be 104 bytes.

Note Below is shown the stack size used in service calls/functions used in the example.

	For Service Call Arguments	For Internal Processing by Program Issued the Service Call	For System Stack Internal Processing
pol_flg	8	8	6
snd_mbx	4	8	4
Timer_Handler function	0	—	6

13.5.2 Stack size of the task

The formula for calculating the stack size of the task is shown below.

[Expression 1: No interrupts generated in task]

Task stack size = size used by user + service-call argument size + 28 (bytes)

[Expression 2: Interrupts generated in task]

Task stack size = size used by user + service-call argument size + 28 + 18 (bytes)

Specify the task stack size in the system configuration file. Note, however, that the size that is actually secured is the value specified in the configurator 28 bytes. Consequently, the value that is actually specified in the system configuration file is the sys_stk value calculated in expression 1 or expression 2 minus 28 bytes.

These 28 bytes include the stack size used when system calls are issued. Note, however, that the stack size used when issuing system calls must secure the size used by the user in addition to the 28 bytes of argument stack size. The argument stack sized used by each service call is different. [Table 12-1](#) summarizes these sizes.

The task stack size is the largest stack size used in the task in question. For this reason, if there is a service call with an argument stack of 4 bytes, and another with 8 bytes, then the pattern that uses the most stack - 8 bytes - will be secured.

The above material refers to tasks where interrupts are not accepted (all interrupts are disabled). An additional 18 bytes must be secured for tasks where interrupts are accepted.

Note that these 18 bytes include the stack size when the `_kernel_int_entry` function is called (required to be called when an interrupt starts). `_kernel_int_entry` only retires the 18 bytes of data from the stack, it does not replace it. The data is recovered upon the call to the `ret_int` function, which must be called when the interrupt ends.

Example 1 Task "task1" uses the `pol_flg` and `snd_mbx` service calls, and has no other functions or processes that use the stack.

If interrupts are not accepted in the task, interrupts are not accepted in task1, so Expression 1 is the formula for calculating stack usage.

Because there are no functions or processes that use the stack, the size used by the user is 0.

When the size of arguments to all service calls is investigated, the results are as shown below.

Service-call argument size (`pol_flg`) = 8 bytes

Service-call argument size (`snd_mbx`) = 4 bytes

The largest stack size is used in the call to `pol_flg`, so this is specified in Expression 1.

Task stack size = size used by user + service-call argument size (`pol_flg`) + 28
 = 0 + 8 + 28
 = 36 bytes

The size specified in the system configuration file will be the above minus 28 bytes, which equals 8 bytes.

Example 2 In task "task1", function A (using 12 bytes of stack) makes a `pol_flg` service call, and function B (using 20 bytes of stack) makes a `snd_mbx` service call.

Since interrupts are accepted in the task, Expression 2 is used as the calculation formula. List the patterns in order to find the one that uses the most stack.

Pattern A = size used by user (for function A) + service-call argument size (`pol_flg`) + 28 + 18
 = 12 + 8 + 28 + 18
 = 66 bytes

Pattern B = size used by user (for function B) + service-call argument size (`snd_mbx`) + 28 + 18
 = 20 + 4 + 28 + 18
 = 70 bytes

Compare pattern B with pattern A. The pattern that uses the most stack is pattern A, at 70 bytes.

The size specified in the system configuration file will be the above minus 28 bytes, which equals 42 bytes.

13.6 Description Examples

The following describes an example for coding the system configuration file.

Figure 13-2 Example of System Configuration File

```
-- System Information description
SYS_STK ( 256 );
MAX_PRI ( 15 );

-- Static API Information description
CRE_TSK ( ID_tsk, { TA_HLNG | TA_ACT | TA_DISINT, 0xa, func_task, 1 256, NULL } );
CRE_TSK ( ID_tskA, { TA_HLNG | TA_ACT, 0x14, func_taskA, 2, 256, NULL } );
CRE_TSK ( ID_tskB, { TA_ASM | TA_ENAINT, 0x1e, func_taskB, 3, 512, NULL } );

CRE_SEM ( ID_semA, { TA_TFIFO, 0, 127 } );
CRE_SEM ( ID_semB, { TA_TFIFO, 127, 127 } );

CRE_FLG ( ID_flgA, { TA_TFIFO | TA_WSGL | TA_CLR, 0 } );
CRE_FLG ( ID_flgB, { TA_TFIFO | TA_WSGL, 0 } );

CRE_MBX ( ID_mbxA, { TA_TFIFO | TA_MFIFO, 0, NULL } );
CRE_MBX ( ID_mbxB, { TA_TFIFO | TA_MPRI, 0, NULL } );

CRE_MPF ( ID_mpfA, { TA_TFIFO, 10, 8:plarea, NULL } );
CRE_MPF ( ID_mpfB, { TA_TFIFO, 8, 16, NULL } );

CRE_CYC ( ID_cycA, { TA_HLNG | TA_STA, 0, func_cychdrA, 1, 0 } );
CRE_CYC ( ID_cycB, { TA_ASM, 0, func_cychdrB, 2, 0 } );
```

CHAPTER 14 CONFIGURATOR CF78K0R

This chapter explains configurator CF78K0R, which is provided by the RX78K0R as a utility tool useful for system construction.

14.1 Outline

To build systems (load module) that use functions provided by the RX78K0R, the information storing data to be provided for the RX78K0R is required.

Since information files are basically enumerations of data, it is possible to describe them with various editors.

Information files, however, do not excel in descriptiveness and readability; therefore substantial time and effort are required when they are described.

To solve this problem, the RX78K0R provides a utility tool (configurator CF78K0R) that converts a system configuration file which excels in descriptiveness and readability into information files.

The CF78K0R reads the system configuration file as a input file, and then outputs information files.

The information files output from the CF78K0R are explained below.

- System information table file

An information file that stores data required for the operation of the RX78K0R.

- System information header file

An information file that stores matching between ID numbers and object names (e.g. task, and semaphore names) described in the system configuration file.

The CF78K0R can output two types of system information header files for C and assembly languages.

14.2 Activation Method

14.2.1 Activating from command line

The following is how to activate the CF78K0R from the command line.

Note that, in the examples below, "C>" indicates the command prompt, "Δ" indicates pressing of the space key, and "<Enter>" indicates pressing of the enter key.

The activation options enclosed in "[]" can be omitted.

```
C> cf78k0r.exe Δ [@command file] Δ [-i Δ <SIT file> | -ni] Δ
    [-dc Δ <C header file> | -ndc] Δ [-da Δ <ASM header file> | -nda] Δ [-V] Δ
    [-help] Δ <CF file> <Enter>
```

The details of each activation option are explained below:

- @command file

Specifies the command file name to be input.

If omitted The activation options specified on the command line is valid.

Note 1 Specify the input file name "command file" within 255 characters including the path name.

Note 2 For the details about the command file, refer to "14.2.3 Command file".

- -iΔ<SIT file>

Specifies the system information table file name to be output.

If omitted If omitted, the CF78K0R interprets it that -iΔsit.asm is specified.

Note Specify the output file name "<SIT file>" within 255 characters including the path name.

- -ni

Disables output of the system information table file.

If omitted If omitted, the CF78K0R interprets it that -iΔsit.asm is specified.

- -dcΔ<C header file>

Specifies the system information header file (for C language) name to be output.

If omitted If omitted, the CF78K0R interprets it that -dcΔkernel_id.h is specified.

Note Specify the output file name "<SIT file>" within 255 characters including the path name.

- -ndc

Disables output of the system information header file (for C language).

If omitted If omitted, the CF78K0R interprets it that -dcΔkernel_id.h is specified.

- -daΔ<ASM header file>

Specifies the system information header file (for assembly language) name to be output.

If omitted If omitted, the CF78K0R interprets it that -daΔkernel_id.inc is specified.

Note Specify the output file name "<ASM header file>" within 255 characters including the path name.

- -nda

Disables output of the system information header file (for assembly language).

If omitted If omitted, the CF78K0R interprets it that -da△kernel_id.inc .inc is specified.

- -V

Outputs version information for the CF78K0R to the standard output.

Note If this activation option is specified, the CF78K0R handles other activation options as invalid options and suppresses outputting of information files.

- -help

Outputs the usage of the activation options for the CF78K0R to the standard output.

Note If this activation option is specified, the CF78K0R handles other activation options as invalid options and suppresses outputting of information files.

- <CF file>

Specifies the system configuration file name to be input.

Note 1 Specify the input file name "<CF file>" within 255 characters including the path name.

Note 2 This input file name can be omitted only when -V or -help is specified.

14.2.2 Activating from CubeSuite

This is started when CubeSuite performs a build, in accordance with the setting on the [Property panel](#), on the [\[System Configuration File Related Information\] tab](#).

14.2.3 Command file

The CF78K0R performs command file support from the objectives that eliminate specified probable activation option character count restrictions in the command lines.

Description formats of the command file are described below.

1) Comment lines

Lines that start with # are treated as comment lines.

2) Delimiting activation options

Delimit activation options using a space code, tab code, or a linefeed code.

Note For activation options consist of the -xxx part and parameter part, like "-iΔ<SIT file>", "-dcΔ<C header file>", and "-daΔ<ASM header file>", delimit the -xxx part and parameter part using a space code, tab code, or a linefeed code.

When specifying a folder name that includes a space code in the parameter part, enclose the parameter part using double-quotation marks (") as shown in [Figure 14-1](#).

3) Maximum number of characters

Up to 50 lines and up to 4,096 characters per line can be coded in a command file.

The following shows an example of activation option coding whereby "system configuration file CF_file.cfg is loaded from the current folder, system information table filesit_file.asm is output to a folder in C:\Program Files\tmp, system information header file C_header.h (for C) is output to a folder in C:\tmp, system information header file ASM_header.inc (for assembly language) is output to a folder in C:\tmp".

Figure 14-1 Example of Command File Description

```
# Command File
-i "C:\Program Files\tmp\sit_file.asm"
-dc C:\tmp\C_header.h
-da
"C:\tmp\ASM_header.inc"
CF_file.cfg
```

14.2.4 Command input examples

The following shows the CF78K0R command input examples.

In these examples, "C>" indicates the command prompt, "Δ" indicates the space key input, and "<Enter>" indicates the ENTER key input.

- 1) After loading command file cmd_file from the current folder, the activation option defined in cmd_file is executed.

```
C> cf78k0r.exe Δ @cmd_file <Enter>
```

- 2) After loading system configuration file CF_file.cfg from the current folder, system information table filesit_file.asm, the system information header file C_header.h (for C) and system information header file ASM_header.inc (for assembly language) are output to the current folder.

```
C> cf78k0r.exe Δ -iΔsit_file.asm Δ -dc Δ C_header.h Δ -da Δ ASM_header.inc Δ
CF_file.cfg <Enter>
```

- 3) After loading system configuration file CF_file.cfg from the current folder, system information table filesit_file.asm, the system information header file kernel_id.h (for C) and system information header file kernel_id.inc (for assembly language) are output to the current folder.

```
C> cf78k0r.exe Δ CF_file.cfg <Enter>
```

- 4) After loading system configuration file CF_file.cfg from a folder in C:\tmp, system information table filesit_file.asm, the system information header file C_header.h (for C) is output to a folder in C:\tmp.

```
C> cf78k0r.exe Δ -i Δ C:\tmp\sit_file.asm Δ -dc Δ C:\tmp\C_header.h Δ -nda Δ
C:\tmp\CF_file.cfg <Enter>
```

- 5) After loading system configuration file CF_file.cfg from a folder in C:\tmp, the system information table file sit_file.asm is output to a folder in C:\Program Files\tmp.

```
C> cf78k0r.exeΔ-i Δ "C:\Program Files\tmp\sit_file.asm" Δ -ndc Δ -nda Δ
C:\tmp\CF_file.cfg <Enter>
```

- 6) CF78K0R version information is output to the standard output.

```
C> cf78k0r.exe Δ -V <Enter>
```

- 7) Information related to the CF78K0R activation option (type, usage, or the like) is output to the standard output.

```
C> cf78k0r.exe Δ -help <Enter>
```


APPENDIX A WINDOW REFERENCE

This appendix explains the window/panels that are used when the activation option for the CF78K0R is specified from the integrated development environment platform CubeSuite.

A.1 Description

The following shows the list of window/panels.

Table A-1 List of Window/Panels

Window/Panel Name	Function Description
Main window	This is the first window to be open when CubeSuite is launched.
Project Tree panel	This panel is used to display the project components in tree view.
Property panel	This panel is used to display the detailed information on the Realtime OS node, system configuration file, or the like that is selected on the Project Tree panel and change the settings of the information.

Main window

Outline

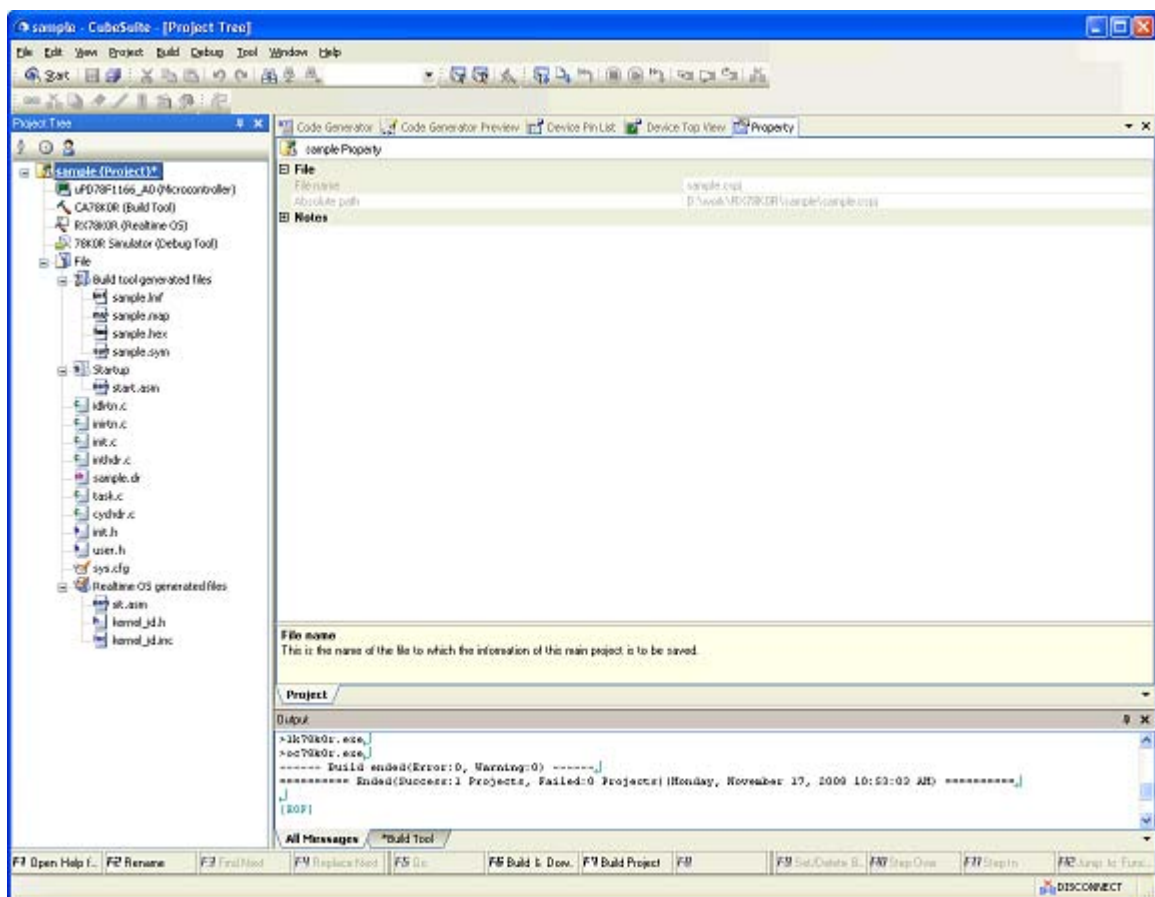
This is the first window to be open when CubeSuite is launched.

This window is used to control the user program execution and open panels for the build process.

This window can be opened as follows:

- Select Windows® [start] -> [All programs] -> [NEC Electronics CubeSuite] -> [CubeSuite]

Display image



Explanation of each area

1) Menu bar

Displays the menus relate to realtime OS.

Contents of each menu can be customized in the User Setting dialog box.

- [View]


Realtime OS	The [View] menu shows the cascading menu to start the tools of realtime OS.
Resource Information	Opens the Realtime OS Resource Information panel. Note that this menu is disabled when the debug tool is not connected.
Performance Analyzer	Opens the AZ78K0R window. Note that this menu is disabled when the debug tool is not connected.

2) Toolbar

Displays the buttons relate to realtime OS.

Buttons on the toolbar can be customized in the User Setting dialog box. You can also create a new toolbar in the same dialog box.

- Realtime OS toolbar

	Opens the Realtime OS Resource Information panel. Note that this button is disabled when the debug tool is not connected.
---	--

3) Panel display area

The following panels are displayed in this area.

- [Project Tree panel](#)
- [Property panel](#)
- Output panel

See the each panel section for details of the contents of the display.

Note See CubeSuite 78K0R Build User's Manual for details about the Output panel.

Project Tree panel

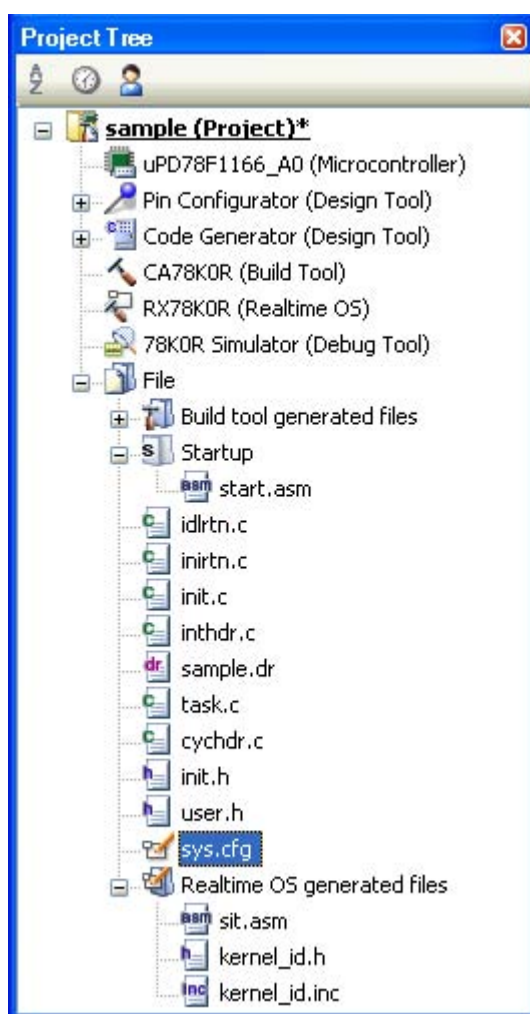
Outline

This panel is used to display the project components such as Realtime OS node, system configuration file, etc. in tree view.

This panel can be opened as follows:

- From the [View] menu, select [Project Tree].

Display image



Explanation of each area

1) Project tree area

Project components are displayed in tree view with the following given node.

Node	Description
RX78K0R(Realtime OS) (referred to as "Realtime OS node")	Realtime OS to be used.
xxx.cfg	System configuration file.
Realtime OS generated files (referred to as "Realtime OS generated files node")	<p>The following information files appear directly below the node created when a system configuration file is added.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - System information table file (.asm) - System information header file (for C language) (.h) - System information header file (for assembly language) (.inc) <p>This node and files displayed under this node cannot be deleted directly. This node and files displayed under this node will no longer appear if you remove the system configuration file from the project.</p>

Context menu

1) When the Realtime OS node or Realtime OS generated files node is selected

Property	Displays the selected node's property on the Property panel .
----------	---

2) When the system configuration file or an information file is selected

Assemble	Assembles the selected assembler source file. Note that this menu is only displayed when a system information table file is selected. Note that this menu is disabled when the build tool is in operation.
Open	Opens the selected file with the application corresponds to the file extension. Note that this menu is disabled when multiple files are selected.
Open with Internal Editor...	Opens the selected file with the Editor panel. Note that this menu is disabled when multiple files are selected.
Open with Selected Application...	Opens the Open with Program dialog box to open the selected file with the designated application. Note that this menu is disabled when multiple files are selected.
Open Folder with Explorer	Opens the folder that contains the selected file with Explorer.
Add	Shows the cascading menu to add files and category nodes to the project.
Add File...	Opens the Add Existing File dialog box to add the selected file to the project.
Add New File...	Opens the Add File dialog box to create a file with the selected file type and add to the project.
Add New Category	Adds a new category node at the same level as the selected file. You can rename the category. This menu is disabled while the build tool is running, and if categories are nested 20 levels.

Remove from Project	Removes the selected file from the project. The file itself is not deleted from the file system. Note that this menu is disabled when the build tool is in operation.
Copy	Copies the selected file to the clipboard. When the file name is in editing, the characters of the selection are copied to the clipboard.
Paste	This menu is always disabled.
Rename	You can rename the selected file. The actual file is also renamed.
Property	Displays the selected file's property on the Property panel .

Property panel

Outline

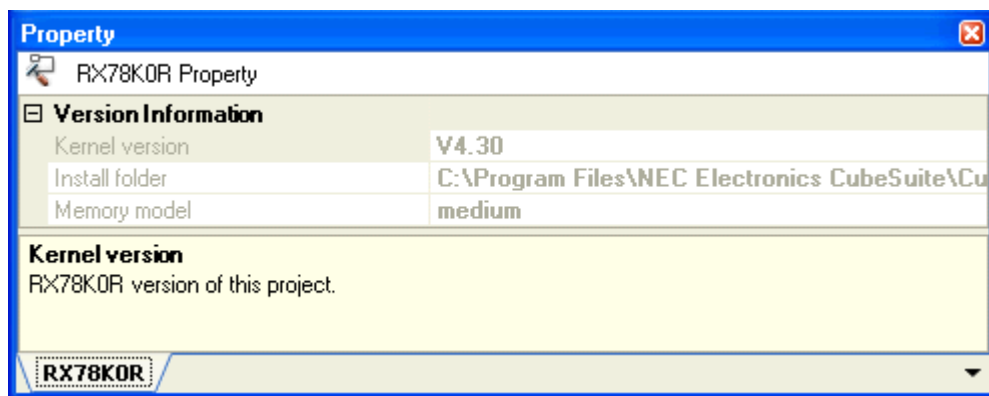
This panel is used to display the detailed information on the Realtime OS node, system configuration file, or the like that is selected on the [Project Tree panel](#) by every category and change the settings of the information.

This panel can be opened as follows:



- On the [Project Tree panel](#), select the Realtime OS node, system configuration file, or the like, and then select the [View] menu -> [Property] or the [Property] from the context menu.

Note When either one of the Realtime OS node, system configuration file, or the like on the [Project Tree panel](#) while the Property panel is opened, the detailed information of the selected node is displayed.

Display image



Explanation of each area

- 1) Selected node area
Display the name of the selected node on the [Project Tree panel](#).
When multiple nodes are selected, this area is blank.
- 2) Detailed information display/change area
In this area, the detailed information on the Realtime OS node, system configuration file, or the like that is selected on the [Project Tree panel](#) is displayed by every category in the list. And the settings of the information can be changed directly.
Mark  indicates that all the items in the category are expanded. Mark  indicates that all the items are collapsed. You can expand/collapse the items by clicking these marks or double clicking the category name
See the section on each tab for the details of the display/setting in the category and its contents.
- 3) Property description area
Display the brief description of the categories and their contents selected in the detailed information display/change area.
- 4) Tab selection area
Categories for the display of the detailed information are changed by selecting a tab.
In this panel, the following tabs are contained (see the section on each tab for the details of the display/setting on the tab).

- When the Realtime OS node is selected on the [Project Tree panel](#)
 - [\[RX78K0R\] tab](#)
- When the system configuration file is selected on the [Project Tree panel](#)
 - [\[System Configuration File Related Information\] tab](#)
 - [\[File Information\] tab](#)
- When the Realtime OS generated files node is selected on the [Project Tree panel](#)
 - [\[Category Information\] tab](#)
- When the system information table file is selected on the [Project Tree panel](#)
 - [\[Build Settings\] tab](#)
 - [\[Individual Assemble Options\] tab](#)
 - [\[File Information\] tab](#)
- When the system information header file is selected on the [Project Tree panel](#)
 - [\[File Information\] tab](#)

Note1 See CubeSuite 78K0R Build User's Manual for details about the [\[File Information\] tab](#), [\[Category Information\] tab](#), [\[Build Settings\] tab](#), and [\[Individual Assemble Options\] tab](#).

Note2 When multiple components are selected on the [Project Tree panel](#), only the tab that is common to all the components is displayed. If the value of the property is modified, that is taken effect to the selected components all of which are common to all.

[Edit] menu (only available for the Project Tree panel)

Undo	Cancels the previous edit operation of the value of the property.
Cut	While editing the value of the property, cuts the selected characters and copies them to the clip board.
Copy	Copies the selected characters of the property to the clip board.
Paste	While editing the value of the property, inserts the contents of the clip board.
Delete	While editing the value of the property, deletes the selected character string.
Select All	While editing the value of the property, selects all the characters of the selected property.

Context menu

Undo	Cancels the previous edit operation of the value of the property.
Cut	While editing the value of the property, cuts the selected characters and copies them to the clip board.
Copy	Copies the selected characters of the property to the clip board.
Paste	While editing the value of the property, inserts the contents of the clip board.
Delete	While editing the value of the property, deletes the selected character string.
Select All	While editing the value of the property, selects all the characters of the selected property.
Reset to Default	Restores the configuration of the selected item to the default configuration of the project. For the [Individual Assemble Options] tab , restores to the configuration of the general option.

Reset All to Default	Restores all the configuration of the current tab to the default configuration of the project. For the [Individual Assemble Options] tab, restores to the configuration of the general option.
----------------------	---

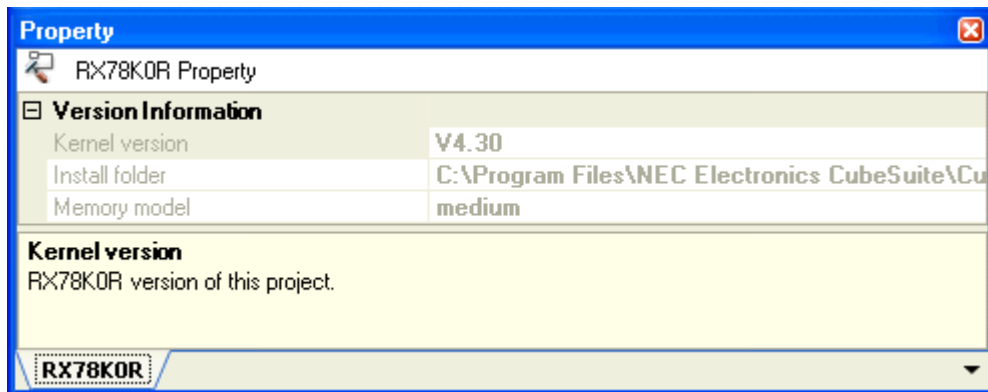
[RX78K0R] tab

Outline

This tab shows the detailed information on RX78K0R to be used categorized by the following.

- Version Information

Display image



Explanation of each area

1) [Version Information]

The detailed information on the version of the RX78K0R are displayed.

Kernel version	Display the version of RX78K0R to be used. Note that the version is set permanently when the project is created, and cannot be changed.	
	Default	<i>Using RX78K0R version</i>
	How to change	Changes not allowed
Install folder	Display the folder in which RX78K0R to be used is installed with the absolute path.	
	Default	<i>The folder in which RX78K0R to be used is installed</i>
	How to change	Changes not allowed
Memory model	Display the memory model set in the project. Display the same value as the value of the [Memory model type] property of the build tool.	
	Default	<i>The memory model selected in the property of the build tool</i>
	How to change	Changes not allowed

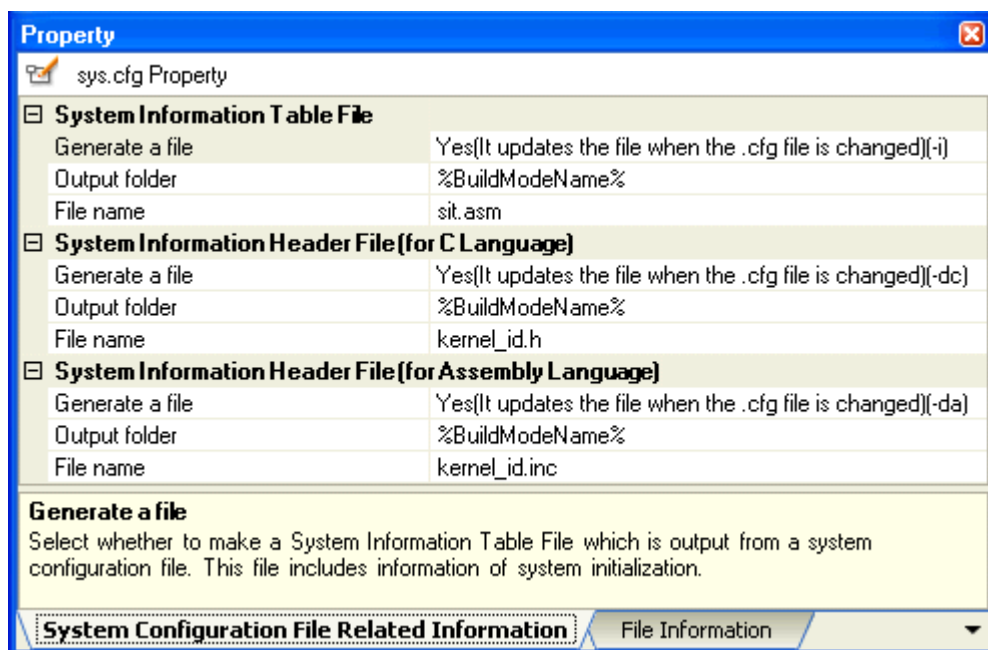
[System Configuration File Related Information] tab

Outline

This tab shows the detailed information on the using system configuration file categorized by the following and the configuration can be changed.

- System information table file
- System information header file (for C language)
- System information header file (for assembly language)

Display image



Explanation of each area

1) [System Information Table File]

The detailed information on the system information table file are displayed and the configuration can be changed.

Generate a file	Select whether to generate a system information table file and whether to update the file when the system configuration file is changed.		
	Default	Yes(It updates the file when the .cfg file is changed)(-i)	
	How to change	Select from the drop-down list.	
	Restriction	Yes(It updates the file when the .cfg file is changed)(-i)	Generates a new system information table file and displays it on the project tree. If the system configuration file is changed when there is already a system information table file, then the system information table file is updated.
		Yes(It does not update the file when the .cfg file is changed)(-ni)	Does not update the system information table file when the system configuration file is changed. An error occurs during build if this item is selected when the system information table file does not exist.
No(It does not register the file to the project)(-ni)		Does not generate a system information table file and does not display it on the project tree. If this item is selected when there is already a system information table file, then the file itself is not deleted.	
Output folder	Specify the folder for outputting the system information table file. If a relative path is specified, the reference point of the path is the project folder. If an absolute path is specified, the reference point of the path is the project folder (unless the drives are different). The following macro name is available as an embedded macro. %BuildModeName%: Replaces with the build mode name. If this field is left blank, macro name "%BuildModeName%" will be displayed. This property is not displayed when [No(It does not register the file that is added to the project)(-ni)] in the [Generate a file] property is selected.		
	Default	%BuildModeName%	
	How to change	Directly enter to the text box or edit by the Browse For Folder dialog box which appears when clicking the [...] button.	
	Restriction	Up to 247 characters	
File name	Specify the system information table file name. If the file name is changed, the name of the file displayed on the project tree. Use the extension ".asm". If the extension is different or omitted, ".asm" is automatically added. This property is not displayed when [No(It does not register the file that is added to the project)(-ni)] in the [Generate a file] property is selected.		
	Default	sit.asm	
	How to change	Directly enter to the text box.	
	Restriction	Up to 259 characters	

2) [System Information Header File (for C Language)]

The detailed information on the system information header file (for C language) are displayed and the configuration can be changed.

Generate a file	Select whether to generate a system information header file (for C language) and whether to update the file when the system configuration file is changed.		
	Default	Yes(It updates the file when the .cfg file is changed)(-dc)	
	How to change	Select from the drop-down list.	
	Restriction	Yes(It updates the file when the .cfg file is changed)(-dc)	Generates a system information header file and displays it on the project tree. If the system configuration file is changed when there is already a system information header file, then the system information header file is updated.
		Yes(It does not update the file when the .cfg file is changed)(-ndc)	Does not update the system information header file when the system configuration file is changed. An error occurs during build if this item is selected when the system information header file does not exist.
No(It does not register the file to the project)(-ndc)		Does not generate a system information header file and does not display it on the project tree. If this item is selected when there is already a system information header file, then the file itself is not deleted.	
Output folder	Specify the folder for outputting the system information header file (for C language). If a relative path is specified, the reference point of the path is the project folder. If an absolute path is specified, the reference point of the path is the project folder (unless the drives are different). The following macro name is available as an embedded macro. %BuildModeName%: Replaces with the build mode name. If this field is left blank, macro name "%BuildModeName%" will be displayed. This property is not displayed when [No(It does not register the file that is added to the project)(-ndc)] in the [Generate a file] property is selected.		
	Default	%BuildModeName%	
	How to change	Directly enter to the text box or edit by the Browse For Folder dialog box which appears when clicking the [...] button.	
	Restriction	Up to 247 characters	
File name	Specify the system information header file (for C language) name. If the file name is changed, the name of the file displayed on the project tree. Use the extension ".h". If the extension is different or omitted, ".h" is automatically added. This property is not displayed when [No(It does not register the file that is added to the project)(-ndc)] in the [Generate a file] property is selected.		
	Default	kernel_id.h	
	How to change	Directly enter to the text box.	
	Restriction	Up to 259 characters	

3) [System Information Header File (for Assembly Language)]

The detailed information on the system information header file (for assembly language) are displayed and the configuration can be changed.

Generate a file	Select whether to generate a system information header file (for assembly language) and whether to update the file when the system configuration file is changed.		
	Default	Yes(It updates the file when the .cfg file is changed)(-da)	
	How to change	Select from the drop-down list.	
	Restriction	Yes(It updates the file when the .cfg file is changed)(-da)	Generates a system information header file and displays it on the project tree. If the system configuration file is changed when there is already a system information header file, then the system information header file is updated.
		Yes(It does not update the file when the .cfg file is changed)(-nda)	Does not update the system information header file when the system configuration file is changed. An error occurs during build if this item is selected when the system information header file does not exist.
No(It does not register the file to the project)(-nda)		Does not generate a system information header file and does not display it on the project tree. If this item is selected when there is already a system information header file, then the file itself is not deleted.	
Output folder	Specify the folder for outputting the system information header file (for assembly language). If a relative path is specified, the reference point of the path is the project folder. If an absolute path is specified, the reference point of the path is the project folder (unless the drives are different). The following macro name is available as an embedded macro. %BuildModeName%: Replaces with the build mode name. If this field is left blank, macro name "%BuildModeName%" will be displayed. This property is not displayed when [No(It does not register the file that is added to the project)(-nda)] in the [Generate a file] property is selected.		
	Default	%BuildModeName%	
	How to change	Directly enter to the text box or edit by the Browse For Folder dialog box which appears when clicking the [...] button.	
	Restriction	Up to 247 characters	
File name	Specify the system information header file (for assembly language) name. If the file name is changed, the name of the file displayed on the project tree. Use the extension ".inc". If the extension is different or omitted, ".inc" is automatically added. This property is not displayed when [No(It does not register the file that is added to the project)(-nda)] in the [Generate a file] property is selected.		
	Default	kernel_id.inc	
	How to change	Directly enter to the text box.	
	Restriction	Up to 259 characters	

APPENDIX B CAUTIONS

B.1 Restriction of Compiler Option

Systems embedding the RX78K0R cannot use the following compile options.

Option	Meaning
-rc	Prohibits from inserting the align data to allocate the members (consisting of 2 or more bytes) in a structure to even address.

B.2 Handling Register Bank

Systems embedding the RX78K0R should generally operate with register bank 0.

If it is necessary to change the register bank, do so in accordance with the specifications below. Changing the register bank is enabled for some routines, and disabled for others

[Routines where changing the register bank is enabled]

- Task
In the task, the initial register bank number is set permanently to 0.
When switching tasks in the RX78K0R, only the register bank number and one bank's worth of general registers (task-switching bank) are retired/restored.
The remaining three banks of general registers are not retired or restored, so if more than two register banks are to be used in the task process, then when changing the register banks, the general register of the register bank before the change must be retired. If it is not retired, then the register bank could be corrupted in the task that is switched to.
- Interrupt servicing not managed by an OS
When changing a register bank in an interrupt process not matched by the OS, restore the register bank number of the interrupt source when the interrupt ends.

[Routines where changing the register bank is disabled]

- Interrupt handler
Interrupt handlers inherit the register bank number of the source of the interrupt.
- Cyclic handler
Cyclic handlers inherit the register bank number of the source of the timer handler interrupt.
- Idle routine
In the idle routine, the initial register bank number is set permanently to 0.
- Initialization routine
In the initialization routine, the initial register bank number is set permanently to 0. It is overwritten by register bank 0, regardless of the register bank set before OS initialization (before the call to the `__urx_start` function).

B.3 Pointer Declarations

When passing a pointer to an RX78K0R service call, care is needed to ensure that a far pointer is passed. Behavior is not guaranteed subsequent to passing a near pointer.

Particular care is needed if a small model or medium model is selected, because pointers will be near if not explicitly declared as near or far. As shown below, explicitly declare the pointer as far, and cast it to a far pointer when passing it to a service call.

The example is shown below.

```
VP __far *pk_msg;

get_mpf(ID_MPF1, (VP __far *)&pk_msg);
snd_mbx(ID_MBX1, (T_MSG __far *)pk_msg);
```

Particular care is needed if a small model or medium model is selected, because pointers will be near if not explicitly declared as near or far. Care must be taken, however, not to pass pointers explicitly declared as near to a service call.

APPENDIX C INDEX

A

act_tsk 140

B

boot processing 19, 105
 basic form 105
 internal processing 106

C

can_act 141
 can_wup 155
 CF78K0R 234
 activation method 235
 chg_pri 146
 clr_flg 172
 conditional compile macro 129
 configuration information 217
 static API information 217
 system information 217
 configurator 234
 current priority 29
 current state 128
 cyclic handler 18, 77
 basic form 77
 internal processing 78
 cyclic handler information 228
 cyclic handler state packet 137

D

data type 127
 directive file 20
 dis_dsp 208
 dly_tsk 161
 DORMANT state 28
 driving method 110
 event-driven system 110

E

embedding system 26
 ena_dsp 209
 event-driven system 110
 eventflag 53
 clr_flg 172
 iset_flg 170
 pol_flg 175
 ref_flg 179
 set_flg 170

twai_flg 177
 wai_flg 173
 eventflag information 224
 eventflag state packet 133
 ext_tsk 144

F

FCFS method 110
 fixed-sized memory pool 69
 get_mpf 190
 pget_mpf 192
 ref_mpf 196
 rel_mpf 195
 tget_mpf 193
 fixed-sized memory pool information 226
 fixed-sized memory pool state packet 136
 frsm_tsk 160

G

get_mpf 190
 get_tid 204

I

iact_tsk 140
 ican_wup 155
 ichg_pri 146
 idle routine 19, 120
 basic form 120
 internal processing 121
 ifrsm_tsk 160
 iget_tid 204
 iloc_cpu 205
 initialization routine 19, 107
 basic form 107
 internal processing 108
 initial priority 29
 interrupt entry processing 19, 94
 basic form 95
 internal processing 95
 interrupt handler 18, 96
 basic form 97
 internal processing 99
 interrupt management function 94
 irel_wai 156
 irot_rdq 203
 irsm_tsk 159
 iset_flg 170
 isig_sem 163
 ista_tsk 142

isus_tsk	157
iunl_cpu	207
iwup_tsk	153

K

kernel initialization module	108
------------------------------------	-----

L

load module	23
loc_cpu	205

M

mailbox	62
message	63
prcv_mbx	185
rcv_mbx	183
ref_mbx	188
snd_mbx	181
trcv_mbx	186
mailbox information	225
mailbox state packet	135
Main window	240
memory pool management function	69, 189
message	63
basic form	63
securement of memory area	63
message packet	134
multiple interrupts	102
multi-task OS	16

P

p0area segment	22, 69
p1area segment	22, 69
p2area segment	22, 69
p3area segment	22, 69
packet format	130
cyclic handler state packet	137
eventflag state packet	133
fixed-sized memory pool packet	136
mailbox state packet	135
message packet	134
semaphore state packet	132
task state packet	130
version information packet	138
pget_mpf	192
pol_flg	175
pol_sem	165
prcv_mbx	185
priority	29
current priority	29
initialpriority	29

priority level method	110
processing program	18
cyclic handler	18
interrupt handler	18
task	18
Project Tree panel	242
Property panel	245

R

rcv_mbx	183
ready queue	111
READY state	28
real-time OS	16
ref_cyc	201
ref_flg	179
ref_mbx	188
ref_mpf	196
ref_sem	168
ref_tsk	148
ref_ver	215
rel_mpf	195
rel_wai	156
return value	129
rot_rdq	203
rsm_tsk	159
RUNNING state	28
RX78K0R	16
[RX78K0R] tab	248
rx78k0r segment	20, 69
rxinf segment	20, 69

S

scheduler	110
driving method	110
scheduling system	110
scheduling system	110
FCFS method	110
priority level method	110
segment	20
p0area	22, 69
p1area	22, 69
p2area	22, 69
p3area	22, 69
rx78k0r	20, 69
rxinf	20, 69
sit	21, 69
stkarea	21, 69
sysarea	21, 69
semaphore	47
isig_sem	163
pol_sem	165
ref_sem	168
sig_sem	163
twai_sem	166

wai_sem	164
semaphore information	223
semaphore state packet	132
set_flg	170
service call	122
sig_sem	163
sit segment	21, 69
slp_tsk	150
snd_mbx	181
sns_ctx	210
sns_dpn	213
sns_dsp	212
sns_loc	211
stack size estimation	230
sta_cyc	198
static API information	217, 220
cyclic handler information	228
eventflag information	224
fized-sized memory pool information	226
mailbox information	225
semaphore information	223
task information	220
sta_tsk	142
stkarea segment	21, 69
stp_cyc	200
SUSPENDED state	28
sus_tsk	157
synchronization and communication function	47
eventflag	53, 169
mailbox	62, 180
semaphore	47, 162
sysarea segment	21, 69
[System Configuration File Related Information] tab ...	249
system configuration file	18, 216
system configuration management function	104, 214
ref_ver	215
system construction	17
system information	217, 218
sytem stack information	218
task priority information	219
system information header file	234
system information table file	234
system stack information	218
system state management function	82, 202
dis_dsp	208
ena_dsp	209
get_tid	204
iget_tid	204
iloc_cpu	205
irot_rdq	203
iunl_cpu	207
loc_cpu	205
rot_rdq	203
sns_ctx	210
sns_dpn	213
sns_dsp	212
sns_loc	211

unl_cpu	207
---------------	-----

T

task	18, 27
basic form	30
internal processing	30
task dependent synchronization function	38, 149
ican_wup	155
can_wup	155
dly_tsk	161
frsm_tsk	160
ifrm_tsk	160
irel_wai	156
irsm_tsk	159
isus_tsk	157
iwup_tsk	153
rel_wai	156
rsm_tsk	159
slp_tsk	150
sus_tsk	157
tslp_tsk	151
wup_tsk	153
task information	220
task management function	27, 139
act_tsk	140
can_act	141
chg_pri	146
ext_tsk	144
iact_tsk	140
ichg_pri	146
ista_tsk	142
ref_tsk	148
sta_tsk	142
ter_tsk	145
task priority information	219
task state	27
DORMANT state	28
READY state	28
RUNNING state	28
SUSPENDED state	28
WAITING state	28
WAITING-SUSPENDED state	28
task state packet	130
ter_tsk	145
tget_mpf	193
time management function	75, 197
ref_cyc	201
sta_cyc	198
stp_cyc	200
timeout	76
timer handler	75
trcv_mbx	186
tslp_tsk	151
twai_flg	177
twai_sem	166

U

unl_cpu	207
user-own coding module	19
boot processing	19
idle routine	19
initialization routine	19
interrupt entry processing	19

V

version information packet	138
----------------------------------	-----

W

wai_flg	173
wai_sem	164
WAITING state	28
WAITING-SUSPENDED state	28
WAITING type	128
wup_tsk	153

[MEMO]

*For further information,
please contact:*

NEC Electronics Corporation
1753, Shimonumabe, Nakahara-ku,
Kawasaki, Kanagawa 211-8668,
Japan
Tel: 044-435-5111
<http://www.necel.com/>

[America]

NEC Electronics America, Inc.
2880 Scott Blvd.
Santa Clara, CA 95050-2554, U.S.A.
Tel: 408-588-6000
800-366-9782
<http://www.am.necel.com/>

[Europe]

NEC Electronics (Europe) GmbH
Arcadiastrasse 10
40472 Düsseldorf, Germany
Tel: 0211-65030
<http://www.eu.necel.com/>

Hanover Office
Podbielskistrasse 166 B
30177 Hannover
Tel: 0 511 33 40 2-0

Munich Office
Werner-Eckert-Strasse 9
81829 München
Tel: 0 89 92 10 03-0

Stuttgart Office
Industriestrasse 3
70565 Stuttgart
Tel: 0 711 99 01 0-0

United Kingdom Branch
Cygnus House, Sunrise Parkway
Linford Wood, Milton Keynes
MK14 6NP, U.K.
Tel: 01908-691-133

Succursale Française
9, rue Paul Dautier, B.P. 52
78142 Velizy-Villacoublay Cédex
France
Tel: 01-3067-5800

Sucursal en España
Juan Esplandiú, 15
28007 Madrid, Spain
Tel: 091-504-2787

Tyskland Filial
Täby Centrum
Entrance S (7th floor)
18322 Täby, Sweden
Tel: 08 638 72 00

Filiale Italiana
Via Fabio Filzi, 25/A
20124 Milano, Italy
Tel: 02-667541

Branch The Netherlands
Steijgerweg 6
5616 HS Eindhoven
The Netherlands
Tel: 040 265 40 10

[Asia & Oceania]

NEC Electronics (China) Co., Ltd
7th Floor, Quantum Plaza, No. 27 ZhiChunLu Haidian
District, Beijing 100083, P.R.China
Tel: 010-8235-1155
<http://www.cn.necel.com/>

Shanghai Branch
Room 2509-2510, Bank of China Tower,
200 Yincheng Road Central,
Pudong New Area, Shanghai, P.R.China P.C:200120
Tel:021-5888-5400
<http://www.cn.necel.com/>

Shenzhen Branch
Unit 01, 39/F, Excellence Times Square Building,
No. 4068 Yi Tian Road, Futian District, Shenzhen,
P.R.China P.C:518048
Tel:0755-8282-9800
<http://www.cn.necel.com/>

NEC Electronics Hong Kong Ltd.
Unit 1601-1613, 16/F., Tower 2, Grand Century Place,
193 Prince Edward Road West, Mongkok, Kowloon, Hong Kong
Tel: 2886-9318
<http://www.hk.necel.com/>

NEC Electronics Taiwan Ltd.
7F, No. 363 Fu Shing North Road
Taipei, Taiwan, R. O. C.
Tel: 02-8175-9600
<http://www.tw.necel.com/>

NEC Electronics Singapore Pte. Ltd.
238A Thomson Road,
#12-08 Novena Square,
Singapore 307684
Tel: 6253-8311
<http://www.sg.necel.com/>

NEC Electronics Korea Ltd.
11F., Samik Lavied'or Bldg., 720-2,
Yeoksam-Dong, Kangnam-Ku,
Seoul, 135-080, Korea
Tel: 02-558-3737
<http://www.kr.necel.com/>